

# FORD **MONDEO** Owner's Manual





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2021

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3736en 202101 20210122174944



# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

Acknowledgments .....	9
About This Manual .....	9
Symbols Glossary .....	9
REACH .....	11
Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	11
Mobile Communications Equipment .....	12

## Data Privacy

Data Privacy .....	13
Service Data .....	14
Event Data .....	14
Settings Data .....	15
Connected Vehicle Data - Vehicles With: Modem .....	15
Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	15
Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: eCall .....	16

## Environment

Protecting the Environment .....	17
----------------------------------	----

## At a Glance

Instrument Panel - LHD .....	18
Instrument Panel - RHD .....	19

## Child Safety

Installing Child Restraints - 4-Door .....	21
Installing Child Restraints - 5-Door/ Wagon .....	25
Child Restraint Positioning .....	29
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks .....	33

## Seatbelts

Fastening the Seatbelts .....	34
Seatbelt Height Adjustment .....	34
Seatbelt Reminder .....	35

## Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation .....	36
Driver Airbag .....	36
Passenger Airbag .....	37
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off .....	37
Side Airbags .....	38
Driver Knee Airbag .....	39
Side Curtain Airbags .....	40

## Pedestrian Alert System - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System .....	41
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting .....	41

## Automatic Crash Notification System

eCall .....	42
Emergency Assistance .....	44

## Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations .....	47
Removing the Key Blade .....	47
Locating Your Vehicle .....	47
Changing the Remote Control Battery .....	47
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	49
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting .....	49
Passive Key Backup Position .....	50

## MyKey™

Principle of Operation .....	51
MyKey Settings .....	51
Creating a MyKey .....	52
Programming a MyKey .....	52

# Table of Contents

---

Clearing All MyKeys .....	53
Checking MyKey System Status .....	54
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems .....	54
MyKey – Troubleshooting .....	54
<b>Doors and Locks</b>	
Locking and Unlocking .....	56
Keyless Entry .....	58
<b>Liftgate</b>	
Manual Liftgate .....	61
Power Liftgate .....	62
<b>Security</b>	
Passive Anti-Theft System .....	66
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery .....	66
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor .....	67
<b>Steering Wheel</b>	
Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	70
Locking the Steering Wheel .....	70
Heated Steering Wheel .....	70
<b>Wipers and Washers</b>	
Windshield Wipers .....	72
Autowipers .....	72
Windshield Washers .....	74
Rear Window Wiper and Washers .....	75
Headlamp Washers .....	75
<b>Lighting</b>	
General Information .....	77
Lighting Control .....	77
Autolamps .....	78
Instrument Lighting Dimmer .....	79
Headlamp Exit Delay .....	79
Automatic High Beam Control .....	79
Front Fog Lamps .....	80
Rear Fog Lamps .....	81
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With: Automatic Headlamp Leveling .....	81
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With: Manual Headlamp Leveling .....	81
Cornering Lamps .....	82
Direction Indicators .....	82
Interior Lamps .....	83
Ambient Lighting .....	84
<b>Windows and Mirrors</b>	
Power Windows .....	85
Global Opening and Closing .....	86
Exterior Mirrors .....	87
Interior Mirror - Vehicles Without: Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror .....	89
Interior Mirror - Vehicles With: Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror .....	89
<b>Moonroof</b>	
Opening and Closing the Sun Shade .....	90
Opening and Closing the Moonroof .....	90
Venting the Moonroof .....	91
Moonroof Bounce-Back .....	91
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	
Gauges - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	92
Gauges - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	95
Warning Lamps and Indicators .....	97
Audible Warnings and Indicators .....	101
<b>Information Displays</b>	
General Information - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	103
General Information - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	106
Information Messages .....	115

# Table of Contents

---

## Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

What Is Remote Start .....	132
Remote Start Limitations .....	132
Enabling Remote Start .....	132
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle .....	132
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel .....	132
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel .....	133

## Climate Control

Automatic Climate Control .....	134
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate .....	135
Heated Windshield .....	135
Heated Rear Window .....	136
Heated Exterior Mirrors .....	136
Auxiliary Heater .....	136

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position .....	140
Head Restraints .....	140
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 4-Way Manual Seat .....	142
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 8-Way Manual Seat .....	143
Power Seats - Vehicles Without: Multi-Contour Seats .....	144
Power Seats - Vehicles With: Multi-Contour Seats .....	145
Memory Function .....	147
Rear Seats .....	149
Heated Seats .....	149
Climate Controlled Seats .....	150

## Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System .....	152
--	-----

How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work .....	152
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions .....	152
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations .....	152
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off .....	152
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators .....	153
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings .....	153

## Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points .....	154
Cigar Lighter .....	155

## Storage Compartments

Cup Holders .....	156
-------------------	-----

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions .....	157
Push Button Ignition Switch .....	157
Starting the Engine .....	158
Stopping the Engine .....	159
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	161
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting .....	161

## Unique Driving Characteristics

Hybrid Electric Vehicle .....	165
EcoSelect .....	168

## Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	170
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	170

# Table of Contents

---

Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	170
Stopping the Engine .....	170
Restarting the Engine .....	170
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	171
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	171
 <b>Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission</b>	
What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	173
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	173
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	173
Stopping the Engine .....	173
Restarting the Engine .....	173
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	174
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning .....	174
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	174
 <b>Fuel and Refueling</b>	
Safety Precautions .....	176
Fuel Quality - Gasoline .....	176
Fuel Quality - Diesel .....	177
Fuel Filler Funnel Location .....	177
Running Out of Fuel .....	177
Refueling .....	179
Fuel Consumption .....	181
 <b>Engine Emission Control</b>	
Catalytic Converter .....	183
Selective Catalytic Reductant System .....	183
Gasoline Particulate Filter .....	188
Diesel Particulate Filter .....	189
 <b>High Voltage Battery</b>	
General Information .....	193
High Voltage Shutoff Switch .....	195
 <b>Transmission</b>	
Manual Transmission .....	196
Automatic Transmission - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), 6-Speed Automatic Transmission .....	196
Automatic Transmission - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission .....	199
 <b>All-Wheel Drive</b>	
Using All-Wheel Drive .....	202
 <b>Brakes</b>	
General Information .....	204
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes .....	204
Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission .....	205
Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission .....	207
Hill Start Assist .....	209
 <b>Traction Control</b>	
Principle of Operation .....	211
Using Traction Control .....	211
 <b>Stability Control</b>	
Principle of Operation .....	212
Using Stability Control .....	212
 <b>Parking Aids</b>	
Principle of Operation .....	213
Rear Parking Aid .....	213
Front Parking Aid .....	214
Side Sensing System .....	215
Active Park Assist .....	217
Rear View Camera .....	223
 <b>Cruise Control</b>	
Principle of Operation .....	227
Using Cruise Control .....	227

# Table of Contents

---

Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles Without: Stop and Go .....	228
Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Stop and Go .....	233
<b>Driving Aids</b>	
Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	241
Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Cruise Control .....	243
Driver Alert .....	245
Lane Keeping System .....	247
Blind Spot Information System .....	251
Cross Traffic Alert .....	253
Traffic Sign Recognition .....	255
Eco .....	256
Pre-Collision Assist .....	257
Drive Control .....	262
<b>Local Hazard Information</b>	
What Is Local Hazard Information .....	264
Local Hazard Information Precautions .....	264
Enabling Local Hazard Information .....	264
Checking Local Hazard Information Status .....	264
<b>Load Carrying</b>	
General Information .....	265
Luggage Anchor Points .....	265
Rear Under Floor Storage .....	266
Cargo Nets - Wagon .....	266
Luggage Covers .....	267
Roof Racks and Load Carriers .....	268
Dog Guard - Wagon, Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	269
Dog Guard - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), Wagon .....	271
<b>Towing</b>	
Towing a Trailer - 4-Door, Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	274
Towing a Trailer - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), 4-Door .....	275
Towing a Trailer - 5-Door/Wagon .....	275
Trailer Sway Control .....	276
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball .....	276
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Retractable Tow Ball .....	279
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), 8-Speed Automatic Transmission .....	281
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission .....	281
<b>Driving Hints</b>	
Cold Weather Precautions .....	283
Preconditioning Your Vehicle for Cold Weather Driving .....	283
Breaking-In .....	283
Driving Economically .....	283
Driving Through Shallow Water .....	284
Floor Mats .....	284
<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	
Hazard Flashers .....	286
Warning Triangle .....	286
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	286
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	289
Collision, Damage or Fire Event .....	290
Post-Crash Alert System .....	292
Towing Points .....	292
<b>Crash and Breakdown Information</b>	
Automatic Crash Shutoff .....	293
<b>Fuses</b>	
Fuse Specification Chart - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	294

# Table of Contents

---

Fuse Specification Chart - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	304
Changing a Fuse .....	313
<b>Maintenance</b>	
General Information .....	315
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	315
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Hybrid .....	316
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue .....	318
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Hybrid .....	319
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBlue .....	319
Engine Oil Check .....	319
Engine Cooling Fan .....	320
Engine Coolant Check - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	320
Engine Coolant Check - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	324
Brake Fluid Check .....	325
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission .....	326
Changing the 12V Battery - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	326
Changing the 12V Battery - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	328
Washer Fluid Check .....	330
Checking the Wiper Blades .....	330
Changing the Wiper Blades .....	330
Changing a Bulb .....	331
<b>Vehicle Care</b>	
Cleaning the Exterior .....	335
Cleaning the Interior .....	336
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	338
Waxing Your Vehicle .....	338
<b>Wheels and Tires</b>	
General Information .....	339
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	339
Tire Care .....	343
Using Winter Tires .....	344
Using Snow Chains .....	344
Changing a Road Wheel .....	345
Tire Pressures .....	351
Lug Nuts .....	352
<b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b>	
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	353
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions .....	353
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations .....	353
Viewing the Tire Pressures .....	353
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	354
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting .....	354
<b>Capacities and Specifications</b>	
Vehicle Dimensions - 4-Door .....	356
Vehicle Dimensions - 5-Door .....	357
Vehicle Dimensions - Wagon .....	358
Towbar Dimensions - 4-Door/5-Door .....	359
Towbar Dimensions - Wagon .....	360
Vehicle Identification Plate .....	361
Vehicle Identification Number .....	361
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L Hybrid .....	362
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L EcoBlue .....	364
Bulb Specification Chart .....	366
Fuel Consumption Figures .....	368
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.0L Hybrid .....	368
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.0L EcoBlue .....	369
<b>Connected Vehicle</b>	
What Is a Connected Vehicle .....	370

# Table of Contents

---

Connected Vehicle Requirements .....	370	End User License Agreement .....	426
Connected Vehicle Limitations .....	370	Declaration of Conformity .....	452
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network .....	370		
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....	370		
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem .....	371		
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	372		
<b>Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot</b>			
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot .....	374		
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password .....	374		
<b>Audio System</b>			
General Information .....	375		
Audio Unit - Vehicles Without: Sony Audio System .....	376		
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony Audio System .....	377		
Digital Radio .....	380		
USB Port .....	382		
Using Voice Recognition .....	383		
<b>SYNC™ 3</b>			
General Information .....	384		
Using Voice Recognition .....	386		
Entertainment .....	392		
Climate .....	394		
Phone .....	397		
Navigation .....	399		
Electric Vehicle Information .....	403		
Apps .....	407		
Settings .....	408		
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting .....	410		
<b>Appendices</b>			
Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	420		
eCall User Information .....	423		



# Introduction

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

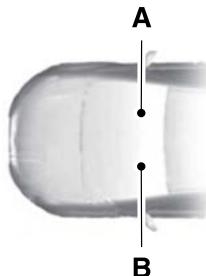
**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert.



See the Owner's Manual.



Air conditioning system.



Anti-lock braking system.



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks.

# Introduction

---

	Battery.		Engine coolant.
	Battery acid.		Engine coolant temperature.
	Brake fluid level.		Engine oil.
	Brake system.		Explosive gas.
	Brake failure.		Fan warning.
	Cabin air filter.		Fasten seatbelt.
	Check fuel cap.		Front airbag.
	Child safety door lock.		Front fog lamps.
	Child safety door unlock.		Fuel pump reset.
	Child seat lower anchor.		Fuse compartment.
	Child seat tether anchor.		Hazard warning flashers.
	Cruise control.		Heated rear window.
	Do not open when hot.		Heated windshield.
	Electronic power steering malfunction.		Interior luggage compartment release.
	Engine air filter.		Jack.

# Introduction

---



Keep out of reach of children.



Lighting control.



Low tire pressure warning.



Maintain correct fluid level.



Panic alarm.



Parking aid.



Parking brake.



Power steering fluid.



Power windows.



Power window lockout.



Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL).



Service engine soon.



Side airbag.



Shield the eyes.



Stability control.



Windshield wash and wipe.

## REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

**Note:** To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

# Introduction

---

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this manual was correct at the time of publication, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** Error logs are reset following a service or repair.

**Note:** We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

## SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

**Note:** *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

## EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 408).

## Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

## Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network

service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com) or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network** (page 370).*

**Note:** *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## MOBILE DEVICE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 407).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

# Data Privacy

---

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 408).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA - VEHICLES WITH: ECALL

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services

operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system transmits are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle fuel type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.

**Note:** *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

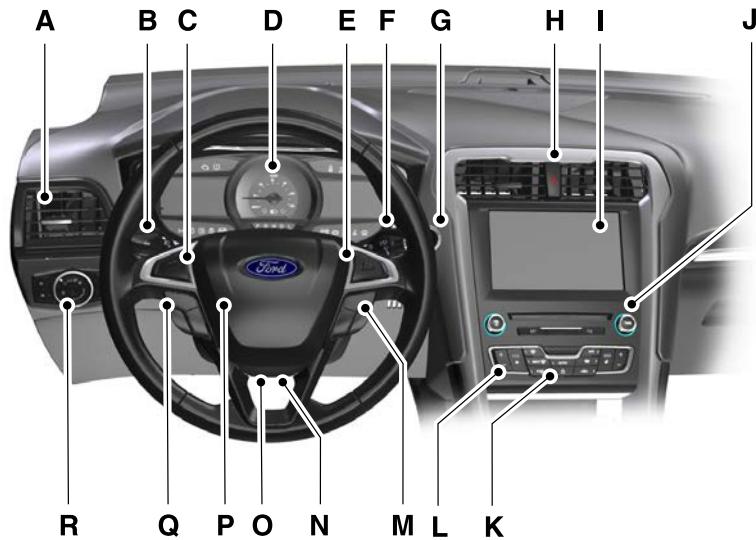
## PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

# At a Glance

## INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD



E190358

A	Air vents.	G	Keyless starting. See <b>Push Button Ignition Switch</b> (page 157).
B	Direction indicators. See <b>Direction Indicators</b> (page 82).	H	Hazard flashers. See <b>Hazard Flashers</b> (page 286).
C	Information display controls. See <b>General Information</b> (page 103).	I	Information and entertainment display.
D	Instrument cluster. See <b>Instrument Cluster</b> (page 92).	J	Audio system. See <b>Audio System</b> (page 375).
E	Information display controls. See <b>General Information</b> (page 103).	K	Climate control. See <b>Climate Control</b> (page 134).
F	Wiper lever. See <b>Wipers and Washers</b> (page 72).	L	Heated windows and mirrors. See <b>Heated Windshield</b> (page 135).

# At a Glance

- M Audio control. See **Audio Unit** (page 376). Voice control.
- N Driver knee airbag. See **Driver Knee Airbag** (page 39).
- O Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 70).
- P Horn.
- Q Cruise control. See **Principle of Operation** (page 227).
- R Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 77).

## INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD



E190357

- A Air vents.
- B Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 82).
- C Information display controls. See **General Information** (page 103).
- D Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 92).
- E Information display controls. See **General Information** (page 103).

## At a Glance

---

- F Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 72).
- G Keyless starting. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 157).
- H Hazard flashers. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 286).
- I Information and entertainment display.
- J Audio system. See **Audio System** (page 375).
- K Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 134).
- L Heated windows and mirrors. See **Heated Windshield** (page 135).
- M Audio control. See **Audio Unit** (page 376). Voice control.
- N Driver knee airbag. See **Driver Knee Airbag** (page 39).
- O Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 70).
- P Horn.
- Q Cruise control. See **Cruise Control** (page 227).
- R Lighting control. See **Lighting** (page 77).

# Child Safety

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS - 4-DOOR



E161855



E68916



**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.



**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.



**WARNING:** Do not modify child restraints in any way.



**WARNING:** Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

**Note:** When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

# Child Safety

## Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

### Baby Safety Restraint (Group 0+)



Secure children that weigh less than 13 kg (29 lb) in a rearward facing baby safety restraint (Group 0+) on the rear seat.

### Child Safety Restraint (Group 1)



Secure children that weigh between 13 kg (29 lb) and 18 kg (40 lb) in a child safety restraint (Group 1) on the rear seat.

## Booster Seats



**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.



**WARNING:** Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.



**WARNING:** You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

# Child Safety

## Booster Seat (Group 2)



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

## Booster Cushion (Group 3)



**WARNING:** When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

## ISOFIX Anchor Points



**WARNING:** Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.

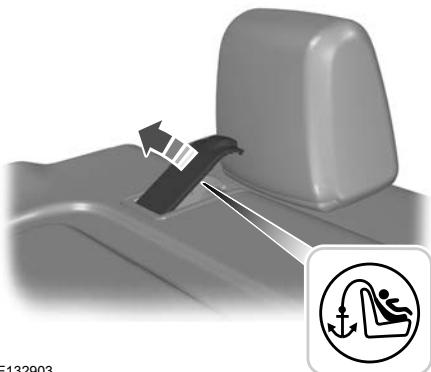


The ISOFIX system has two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint. These attach to anchor points on the outermost rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.

**Note:** If you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Restraint Positioning** (page 29).

# Child Safety

## Top Tether Anchor Points



E132903

For child restraints with a top tether, tether anchor points are behind the second row seats.

## Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers

**⚠️ WARNING:** Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

**⚠️ WARNING:** Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

1. Attach the tether strap to the anchor point.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 267).

**Note:** You may need to lift or remove the head restraint to ease installation. See **Head Restraints** (page 140).

2. Remove the ISOFIX lower anchor point covers.



3. Push the child restraint back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
4. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

## Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg

**⚠️ WARNING:** If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

**⚠️ WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

**⚠️ WARNING:** Make sure that the child restraint manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child restraint.

# Child Safety



E185352

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a support leg.

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS - 5-DOOR/WAGON



E161855



E68916



**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.



**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.



**WARNING:** Do not modify child restraints in any way.



**WARNING:** Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

**Note:** When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

## Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

### Baby Safety Restraint (Group 0+)



Secure children that weigh less than 13 kg (29 lb) in a rearward facing baby safety restraint (Group 0+) on the rear seat.

### Child Safety Restraint (Group 1)



Secure children that weigh between 13 kg (29 lb) and 18 kg (40 lb) in a child safety restraint (Group 1) on the rear seat.

### Booster Seats



**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.



**WARNING:** Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.



**WARNING:** You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

## Booster Seat (Group 2)



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

## Booster Cushion (Group 3)



**WARNING:** When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

## ISOFIX Anchor Points



**WARNING:** Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Child Safety

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



The ISOFIX system has two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint. These attach to anchor points on the outermost rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.

**Note:** If you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Restraint Positioning** (page 29).

## Top Tether Anchor Points



For child restraints with a top tether, tether anchor points are on the back of the second row seats.

## Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers



**WARNING:** Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

1. Attach the tether strap to the anchor point.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 267).

**Note:** You may need to lift or remove the head restraint to ease installation. See **Head Restraints** (page 140).

2. Remove the ISOFIX lower anchor point covers.

# Child Safety



3. Push the child restraint back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
4. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a support leg.

## Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg



**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the child restraint manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child restraint.

## CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING



**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



**WARNING:** If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the

head restraint.

**WARNING:** You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b> .	X	X	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>OFF</b> .	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>
Rear seats. <sup>2</sup>	U	U	U	U	U

<sup>1</sup> We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

**X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.

**U** Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

**UF** Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

# Child Safety

## ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	F, G <sup>1</sup>	E <sup>1</sup>	C, D, E <sup>1</sup>	A, B, B1 <sup>1</sup>	C, D <sup>1</sup>
	Fixture.	L1, L2 <sup>1</sup>	R1 <sup>1</sup>	R1, R2X, R2, R3 <sup>1</sup>	F2, F2X, F3 <sup>1</sup>	R2X, R2, R3 <sup>1</sup>
	Size type.	IL	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

<sup>1</sup>The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

**IL** Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

**IUF** Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

# Child Safety

## Recommended Child Restraints

Mass Group Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
0+ 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Britax Römer.	Baby Safe Plus with ISOFIX base. <sup>1</sup>	ISOFIX base or seatbelt only.
1 9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	Britax Römer.	Duo Plus. <sup>1</sup>	ISOFIX and top tether anchors or seatbelt only.
2 15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. <sup>1, 2</sup>	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.
3 22–36 kg (49–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. <sup>1, 2</sup>	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

<sup>1</sup>We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

<sup>2</sup>We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

## i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b> .	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3 <sup>1</sup>	B2, B3 <sup>1</sup>	B2, B3 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

**i-U** Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

**X** Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

## Child Safety

### CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE CHILD PROOF LOCKS



E124779

Press the switch to turn them on.

**Note:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

**Note:** You cannot use the rear power window switches with the child safety locks on.

Press the switch again to turn them off.

# Seatbelts

## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

**WARNING:** Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

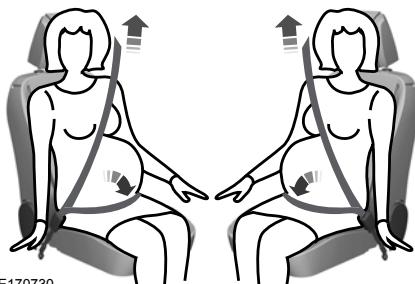
**Note:** *It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.*

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

## Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



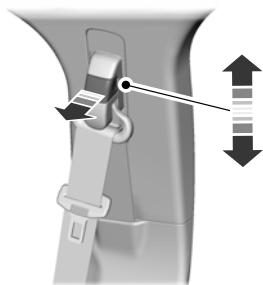
E170730

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

# Seatbelts



1. Pull the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER



**WARNING:** The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front seatbelts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate and sound if a front seatbelt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your seatbelt the warning switches off automatically after approximately five minutes.

### Turning the Seatbelt Reminder Off

Contact an authorized dealer.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



**WARNING:** Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

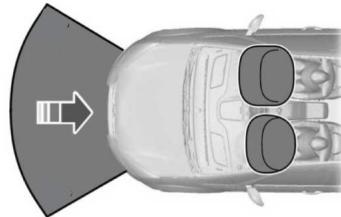


**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

**Note:** A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth.

## DRIVER AIRBAG



The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

### Airbag Warning Lamp



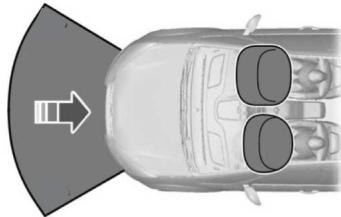
If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

## PASSENGER AIRBAG



The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

## Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

## SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF



E71313

The switch is on the end of the instrument panel on the passenger side of your vehicle. The passenger airbag deactivation indicator is near the climate controls.

## Switching the Passenger Airbag Off



**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Insert the key blade into the switch.

# Supplementary Restraints System



E249662

2. Turn the key to the **OFF** position.
3. When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag deactivation **OFF** indicator illuminates. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Switching the Passenger Airbag On

**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Insert the key blade into the switch.



E249648

2. Turn the key to the **ON** position.

3. When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag deactivation **ON** indicator illuminates. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## SIDE AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.



**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Supplementary Restraints System



E72658

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.



The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

## Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

## DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

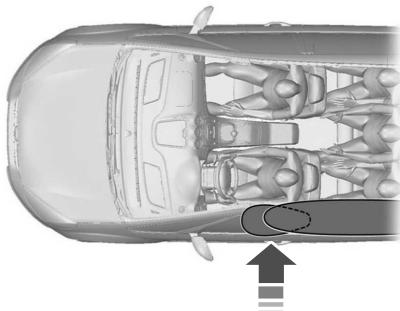
**Note:** *The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.*

# Supplementary Restraints System

## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The curtain airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The curtain airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The curtain airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

### Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

# Pedestrian Alert System - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

---

## WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Electric drive vehicles can be extremely

quiet. The pedestrian alert system is designed to generate a sound to alert pedestrians to the presence of an electric drive vehicle.

## PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Pedestrian Alert System – Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Pedestrian sounder malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

## ECALL



**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** The system is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 423). It uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

**Note:** The system is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

**Note:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford audio system.

**Note:** The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

**Note:** Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

**Note:** In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

**Note:** If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call system indicator illuminates.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Event Data** (page 14).

Examples of data that the system transmits are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle fuel type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.

**Note:** The emergency operator may not receive your vehicle data if the transmission is unsuccessful.

The emergency call system indicator illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on. If it remains on or does not illuminate at all, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Emergency Call System Indicator



The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button on the overhead console.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

Emergency Call System Indicator Status	Description
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Emergency Call System Information Messages

Message	Description
Emergency call system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Automatically Initiated Emergency Call

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

## Manually Initiated Emergency Call



**WARNING:** Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

2. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

**Note:** Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.

3. Speak to the operator.

**Note:** After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for up to an hour.

## Changing the Backup Battery

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

1. Switch the ignition on.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

## EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE



**WARNING:** Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

**Note:** Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services.

**Note:** Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.

**Note:** When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the settings apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.

**Note:** Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

**Note:** In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

**Note:** This feature only works in a country where Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.

## In the Event of a Crash

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system initiates a call to the emergency services.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

**Note:** Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, which may turn on Emergency Assistance. However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered, the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone and initiates a call to the emergency services.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.

**Note:** During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.

**Note:** It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.

**Note:** It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.

# Automatic Crash Notification System

---

**Note:** The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from Emergency Assistance.

## **Emergency Assistance may not work if:**

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country where Emergency Assistance cannot call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.

## **Important Information About Emergency Assistance**

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following countries:

- Albania.
- Armenia.
- Azerbaijan.
- Belarus.
- Bosnia and Herzegovina.
- Georgia.
- Macedonia.
- Moldova.
- Netherlands.
- Russia.
- Ukraine.

## **Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice**

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

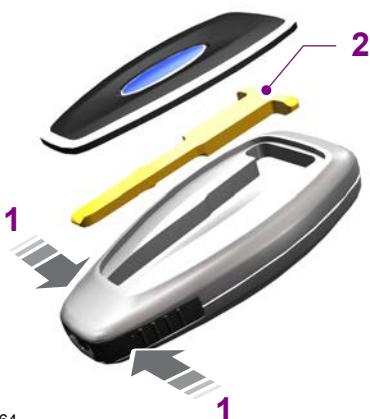
**Note:** Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

**Note:** The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

## REMOVING THE KEY BLADE

The passive key contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

## LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

## Keys and Remote Controls



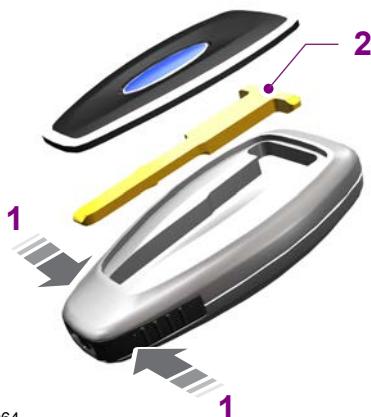
**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

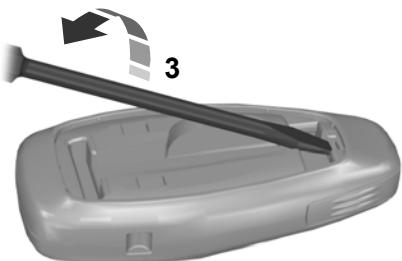
Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



E105362

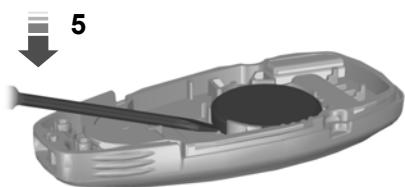
3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.

# Keys and Remote Controls



E125860

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.

**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

6. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

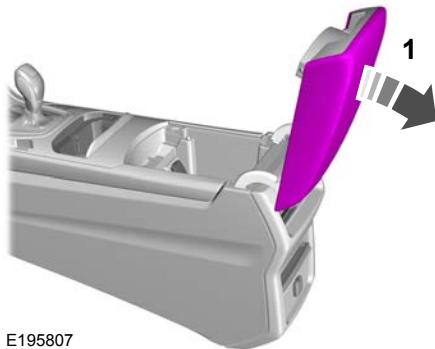
### Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages

Message	Action
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

# Keys and Remote Controls

---

## PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION



E195807

1. Open the center console lid.



E292825

2. Place the passive key in the position shown.

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system is designed to promote good driving behaviors using keys that you have programmed with some restricted settings.

## MYKEY SETTINGS

### Non-Configurable Settings

#### Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

#### Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

#### Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands, when using a MyKey and your vehicle is moving.

#### Configurable Settings

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Speed Limit



**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

#### Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

#### Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

#### Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

#### Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

**Note:** If a phone is connected using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto while driving with a MyKey, the driver can receive phone calls and text messages even if the do not disturb restriction is on.

## Traction Control

If you set traction control to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

## CREATING A MYKEY

1. Place an admin key in the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 50).
2. Switch the ignition on.

**To create a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Create MyKey	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until a confirmation message appears in the information display. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** We recommend that you label this key.

## PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can only program MyKeys to the same settings.

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

**To program a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button. Choose a setting and press the <b>OK</b> button. Configure the setting. Switch the ignition off.

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all

restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

**To clear all MyKeys, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Clear MyKeys	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 103).

### MyKey Distance

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear all MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

### Number of MyKeys

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when all MyKeys have been deleted.

### Number of Admin Keys

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many admin keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

The system is not compatible with non-Ford remote start systems.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The admin key is not placed in the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 50).
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.
- The last MyKey was created without switching the ignition off.

### Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).

### Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.

- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 52).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

## Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?

- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.

# Doors and Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

**Note:** Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.

### Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



Press the button to unlock all doors.

Press the button to lock all doors.

### Door Lock Indicator

An LED on the door window trim illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

### Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch no longer operates after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 103).

### Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time when the ignition is off.

When the ignition is on and your vehicle speed is at or below 5 km/h (3 mph), you can use the remote control to lock and unlock the doors.

### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

**Note:** The driver door can be unlocked with the key if the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, the remote control turns off. Unlocking your vehicle and starting the engine enables the remote control.

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

**Note:** When you press the unlock button, either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process. The available modes appear in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 103).

### Central Locking



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the direction indicators confirms that your vehicle has locked.

### Mislock

This warns you that your vehicle has not locked.

# Doors and Locks

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the luggage compartment is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start.

The horn sounds indicating that your vehicle has pre-locked when you press the lock button on the remote control again within three seconds and a door is open. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 103).

## Double Locking the Doors



**WARNING:** Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirm that your vehicle has double locked.

## Auto Relock

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

## Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed and your vehicle is moving at a speed greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to the accessory position.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to the accessory position.

You can disable this function from the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 103).

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

Use the power door lock control to lock or unlock the doors from inside.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

### Locking the Doors

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

### Double Locking the Doors

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.

### Unlocking the Doors

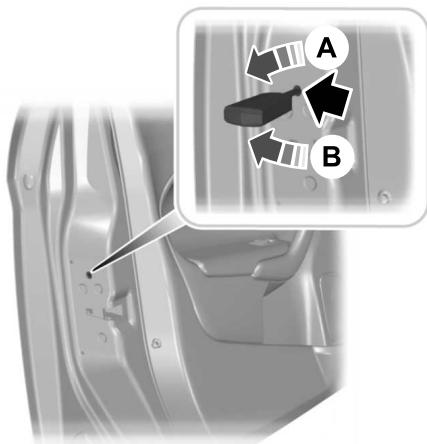
Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

**Note:** If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior door handle, you will only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the exterior door handle.

# Doors and Locks

## Individually Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

### Locking the Doors



If the central locking function does not operate, individually lock the doors using the key in the position shown.

#### Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

#### Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

### Unlocking the Doors

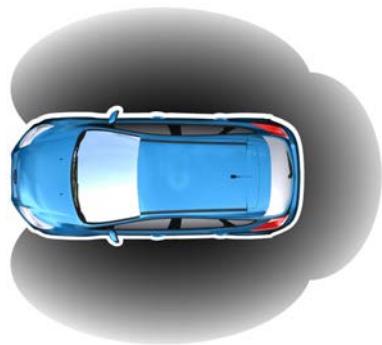
If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then individually unlock all other doors by pulling the interior door handles.

**Note:** If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be individually locked until the central locking function has been repaired.

## KEYLESS ENTRY

### Principle of Operation

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.



E78276

A valid passive key must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles and the liftgate.

The system does not function if:

- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

If the system does not function, use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

### Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of all exterior door handles.

# Doors and Locks



Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash.

Touch a lock sensor twice within three seconds to double lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

**Note:** Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

## Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of all exterior door handles.



Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the top of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over, you can lock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

**Note:** When your vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the system enters an energy-saving mode. This is to prevent your vehicle battery running out of charge. When your vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. To exit the energy-saving mode, unlock your vehicle.

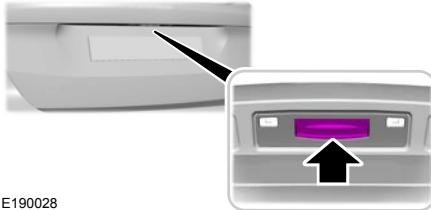
## Unlocking the Driver Door

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 56).

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

## Unlocking the Liftgate



E190028

# Doors and Locks

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be within the detection range.

## Locking the Liftgate

The liftgate locks after you fully close it.

## Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys

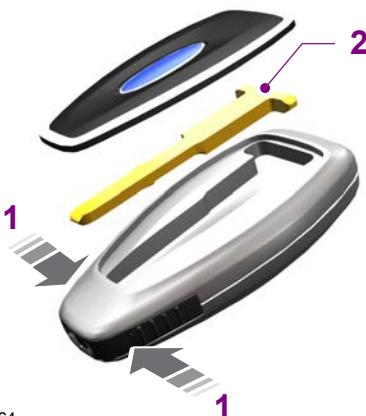
If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside.

**Note:** Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

## Deactivated Passive Keys

The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

## Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

You can switch this feature on or off in the instrument cluster display. See **General Information** (page 103).

# Liftgate

## MANUAL LIFTGATE



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the tailgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

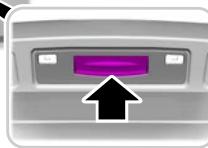
**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open when driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## Opening the Liftgate

### Manually Opening the Liftgate



E190028



1. Press the button inside the liftgate handle.

2. Pull the liftgate upward.

### Remote Control



Press twice within a few seconds to unlatch the liftgate.

## Closing the Liftgate



A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

## POWER LIFTGATE



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. The liftgate could come into contact with objects that are too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the liftgate only operates with the transmission in park (P).

A tone sounds when you attempt to open the liftgate if:

- The ignition is on and the transmission is not in park (P).
- The vehicle battery charge is low.

- The liftgate is not fully closed and your vehicle speed is more than 4 km/h (2 mph).

- The system detects an obstacle.

- The system has malfunctioned.

If the liftgate starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there could be excessive weight on the liftgate or a possible strut failure. A repetitive tone sounds and the liftgate closes under control. If the liftgate continues to close after opening, have the system checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *The liftgate movement stops for a short period of time if you try to open it when it is closing under control.*

**Note:** *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

### Opening the Liftgate

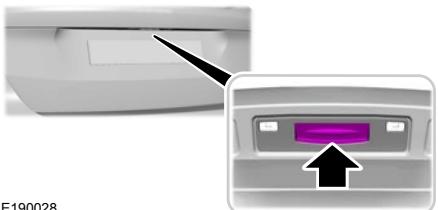
Allow the system to open the liftgate. Do not manually push or pull the liftgate when it is moving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

### Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If a passive key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.

# Liftgate



E190028

2. Press the exterior release button.

## Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle



Press the button next to the lighting control.

## Opening the Liftgate With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

## Closing the Liftgate



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep clear of the liftgate when using the rear switch.

Make sure that you fully close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, for example a garage or a parking structure.

## Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle



E265451

Press the button.

## Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle



Press the button next to the lighting control. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

## Closing the Liftgate With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

## Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.



E265451

2. Press the button to stop the liftgate when it reaches the required height.

**Note:** When the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the required height.

3. Press and hold the button until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

**Note:** You cannot program the height if the liftgate height is too low or too high.

The liftgate opens to the new programmed height the next time you open the liftgate. To change the programmed height again, repeat the above procedure.

**Note:** If you disconnect the vehicle battery, the system recalls the new programmed height after you reconnect it.

## Stopping the Liftgate Movement

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.

- Pressing the liftgate button on the instrument panel.
- Moving your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.\*

\*Vehicles with a hands-free liftgate.

Do not manually push or pull the liftgate when it is moving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## Obstacle Detection

### Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the liftgate could reverse to open. After you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

### Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. After you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

## Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off

**To switch the power liftgate on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Power liftgate	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

## Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp



A warning illuminates in the instrument cluster when you switch the ignition on or if the liftgate is open.

## **Liftgate**

---

### **Liftgate Ajar Information Messages**

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Liftgate open	Displays if the liftgate is open. Fully close the liftgate.

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** *Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

### Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

**Note:** *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle.*

### Arming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer arms after a short period of time when you switch the ignition off.

### Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer disarms when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY

### Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

### Interior Sensors

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

**Note:** *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

### Inclination Sensors

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

### Battery Back-up Sounder (If Equipped)

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm component that has its own battery and sounds a siren if the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. The system arms when you lock your vehicle and the ignition is off.

### Triggering the Alarm

When armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.

# Security

---

- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the hazard flasher flashes for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the inclination and interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

### Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 103).

### Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set. See **General Information** (page 103).

### Arming the Alarm

The alarm arms when you lock your vehicle and the ignition is off. See **Doors and Locks** (page 56).

## Disarming the Alarm

### Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

### Vehicles with Keyless Entry

#### Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 58).

#### Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 58).

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR SENSOR

### Alarm System

**Note:** Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle. The alarm could unintentionally turn on.

# Security

---

## Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

## Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

**Note:** Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement inside your vehicle.

## Inclination Sensors

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

## Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.

## Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Alarm	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

## Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 103).

## Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

# Security

Message	Action and Description
Ask on exit	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reduced guard	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the <b>OK</b> button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.

## Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 56).

## Disarming the Alarm

### Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

### Vehicles with Keyless Entry

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 58).

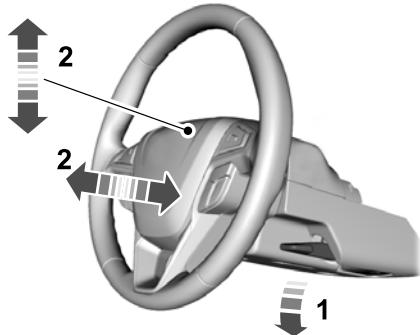
Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 140).



E259854

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E259855

3. Lock the steering column.

## LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

**Note:** The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.

### Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

**Note:** You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

## HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Switch the heated steering wheel on and off using the touchscreen.



Touch the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

## Steering Wheel

---

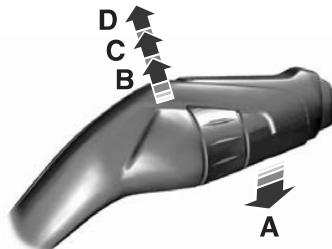
**Note:** You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.

**Note:** The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.

**Note:** In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS



E197525

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

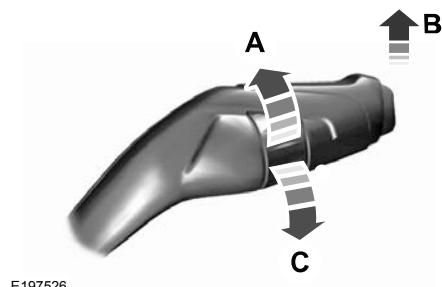
**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 330). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 330).

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

## Intermittent Wipe



E197526

- A Short wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

**Note:** When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

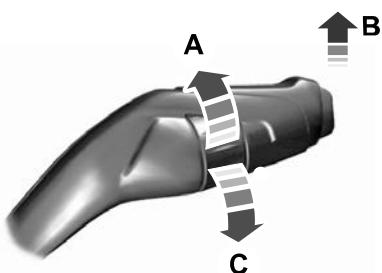
## AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

Autowipers uses a rain sensor in the area around the interior mirror. The wipers operate when the rain sensor detects water on the windshield in front of it. The rain sensor continues to monitor the amount of water and adjusts the speed of the wipers.

You can switch autowipers on or off in the information display.

**Note:** If you switch autowipers off in the information display, the windshield wipers operate in intermittent mode.

# Wipers and Washers



E197526

- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Move the wiper lever upward to the first position to switch autowipers on.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

**Note:** Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

## Settings

**To switch autowipers on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Wipers	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Rain sensing	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

If you leave autowipers on, it may not operate when you switch the ignition on during freezing temperatures. This is because the system has deactivated the rain sensor to prevent damage to the windshield wipers. Defrost the windshield before reactivating the rain sensor. You can reactivate the rain sensor by moving the rotary control or switching autowipers off and on.

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Wet or winter weather conditions could cause unexpected wiping or smearing.

To keep the windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch autowipers off.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 330). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 330).

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E197528

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time. A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.

You can switch courtesy wipe on or off in the information display.

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

## Settings

**To switch courtesy wipe on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Wipers	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Courtesy wipe	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

# Wipers and Washers

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS (IF EQUIPPED)

### Rear Window Wiper



E171615

- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

The rear window wiper also turns on when you shift into reverse and the windshield wipers are on.

You can switch reverse wipe off in the information display.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.

### Settings

**To switch reverse wipe on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Wipers	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reverse wiper	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

### Rear Window Washer

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.



E167407

## HEADLAMP WASHERS (IF EQUIPPED)

If you operate the windshield washers when the headlamps are on, the headlamp washers turn on.

## **Wipers and Washers**

---

**Note:** *The headlamp washers do not operate every time you use the windshield washers. This is to prevent the washer fluid reservoir from emptying quickly.*

# Lighting

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

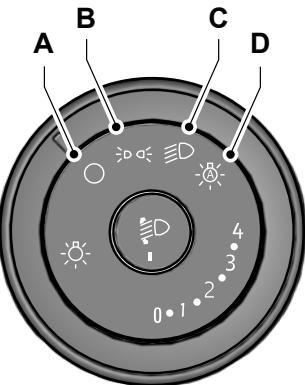
Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL

### Lighting Control Positions



A Lamps off.  
B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps and license plate lamps.  
C Headlamps.  
D Autolamps. See **Autolamps** (page 78).

### Switching All of the Parking Lamps On

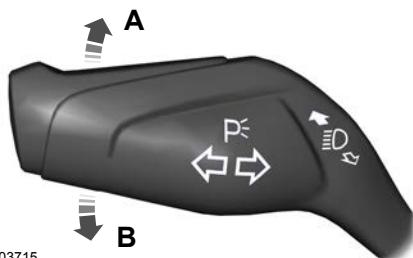
1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.

**Note:** *Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

### Switching the Left-Hand Side or the Right-Hand Side Parking Lamps On (if Equipped)

1. Switch the ignition off.

# Lighting



E203715

## Flashing High Beam Headlamps



E163719

- Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.

**Note:** Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

## Switching High Beam Headlamps On and Off



E163718

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam headlamps on.

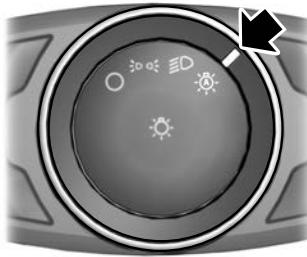
Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beam headlamps off.

**Note:** If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the system turns the headlamps on.

## AUTOLAMPS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps turn on in low light situations, or when the wipers turn on.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

# Lighting

**Note:** If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beams on until the system turns the low beams on.

## Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps do not turn on with the wipers:

- During a single wipe.
- When using the windshield washers.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

**Note:** If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

## HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you again or switching the ignition on.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



**WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



**WARNING:** Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

## About Automatic High Beam Control

The system is designed to turn the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switched the system on in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that high beams are required.

# Lighting

- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

The system is designed to turn the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.

- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

## Switching Automatic High Beam Control On or Off

**To switch the system on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Lighting	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Auto highbeam	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

## Automatic High Beam Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## Overriding Automatic High Beam Control

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS

### Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or Off

Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

You can switch the front fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The front fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

**Note:** The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

# Lighting

## Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## REAR FOG LAMPS

### Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On or Off



**WARNING:** Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 m (164.0 ft).

You can switch the rear fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You switched the front fog lamps on.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The rear fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

## Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELING

This vehicle is equipped with a dynamic automatic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams, do the following:



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

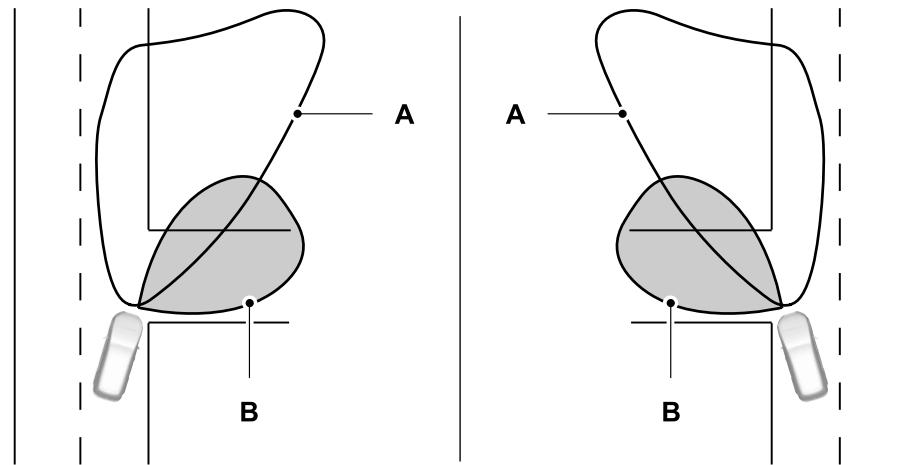
**Note:** Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

**Note:** Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

3. Press to close the control.

# Lighting

## CORNERING LAMPS



E72898

- A Headlamp beam.
- B Cornering lamp beam.

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



E169255

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

# Lighting

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press button A on the front interior lamp.

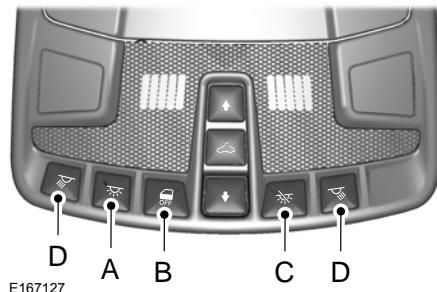
### Front Interior Lamp

**Note:** The front interior lamp switches are on the overhead console. The exact location of each button on the overhead console depends upon your vehicle features.

**Note:** Press the required button to switch the door function off when you open any door. When the door function is off and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps stay off. The indicator lamp lights amber when the door function is off.

**Note:** Press the button again to switch the door function back on. When the door function is on and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps turn on. The indicator lamp lights blue when the door function is on.

### Type 1



E167127

### Type 2

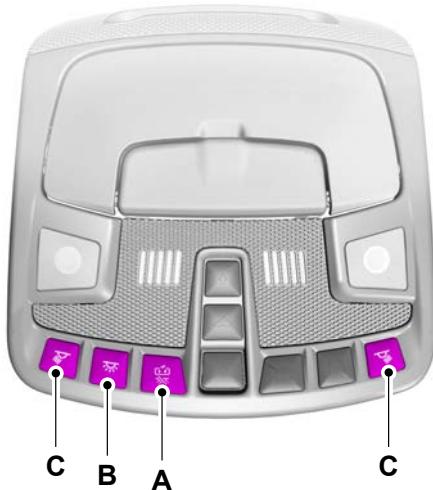


E192153

- A All lamps on.
- B Door function.
- C All lamps off.
- D Individual dome lamps.

# Lighting

## Type 3



E199032

- A Door function.
- B All lamps on.
- C Individual dome lamps.

**Note:** You can switch individual map lamps on independently by pressing a map lens.

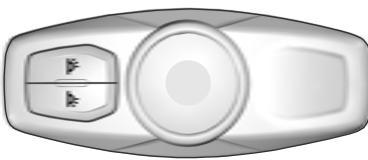
## Rear Interior Lamps (If Equipped)

### Type 1



E169470

## Type 2



E199026

## Type 3



E199027

Press the button to switch the lamps on or off.

## AMBIENT LIGHTING

The ambient lamps illuminate several areas, for example footwells and cup holders.

The ambient lamps illuminate in only one color.

## Switching the Ambient Lamps On

1. Switch the ignition on.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the ambient light.

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

### Opening and Closing the Windows



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

**Note:** The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

#### One-Touch Open (If Equipped)

Fully press the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

#### One-Touch Close (If Equipped)

Fully lift the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

#### Resetting One-Touch Close

Start the engine.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
2. Release the switch.
3. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.

4. Release the switch.

5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.

**Note:** Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

#### Rear Window Lock



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

#### Bounce-Back

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction while closing.

#### Overriding Bounce-Back



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the control within two seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

**Note:** The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.

**Note:** If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Windows and Mirrors

## Resetting Bounce-Back



**WARNING:** Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Start the engine.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
2. Release the switch.
3. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
4. Release the switch.
5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.

**Note:** Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

## Switching Global Opening On and Off

To switch global opening on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Windows	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Remote	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

## Using Global Closing



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

### Using Global Opening

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to open.

**Note:** The moonroof stops in the vent position.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

**Note:** You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

**Note:** Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **Power Windows** (page 85).

# Windows and Mirrors

## Switching Global Closing On and Off

To switch global closing on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Windows	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Remote	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E195229

- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror.

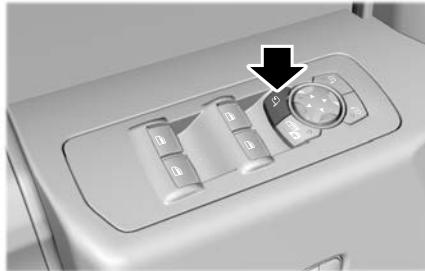
To adjust a mirror:

1. Press A or C to select the mirror you want to adjust. The control lights.
2. Press B to adjust the mirror's position.
3. Press the mirror control again. The light turns off.

### Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

### Power-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)



E195334

# Windows and Mirrors

---

To fold both mirrors, make sure you switch your vehicle on (with the ignition in accessory mode or the engine running) and then:

1. Press the control to fold the mirrors.
2. Press the control again to unfold.

**Note:** Once you press the control, you cannot stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control again.

## Auto-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)

**Note:** The auto-fold mirrors operate only if they are in an unfolded position. If you folded the mirrors using the power-folding control, then you must unfold the mirrors using the power-folding control so the auto-fold feature can work.

The mirrors fold automatically when you lock the vehicle. The mirrors unfold when you unlock the vehicle.

You can switch this feature on or off using the vehicle settings menu in the information display.

## Loose Mirror

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if they:

- Vibrate while driving or feel loose.
- Do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.

To reset the power-fold feature:

1. Use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors.
2. When you hear one or both of the mirrors make a loud noise, it means that you reset the mirrors successfully. This noise is normal.
3. Repeat this process each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Even though the power-folding mirrors typically operate electronically, you can still fold and unfold them manually. After any manual adjustment, however, the power-folding mirrors become unsynchronized, even after repositioning them.

An unsynchronized mirror may:

- Not fold or unfold normally.
- Not stay in its set position.
- Feel loose or even vibrate at normal driving speeds.

You can reset the mirrors by doing the following:

1. Use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors.
2. When you hear one or both of the mirrors make a loud noise, it means that you reset the mirrors successfully. This noise is normal.
3. Repeat this process each time the power-folding mirrors fold or unfold manually.

## Reverse Mirror Dipping (If Equipped)

One of your exterior mirrors automatically dips down when you place your vehicle into reverse (R). This feature gives you a view of the curb.

To use, do the following:

1. Select a mirror using the power mirror control.
2. When you place your vehicle into reverse (R), the mirror automatically dips.

The exterior mirror automatically returns to its original position when:

- Your vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (5 mph).
- Your vehicle is no longer in reverse (R).
- You switch the power mirror control off.

# Windows and Mirrors

## Setting a Reverse Mirror Dipping Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Select the mirror you want to adjust.
3. Put your vehicle into reverse (R).
4. Re-position the mirror to your preference.

**Note:** If you have already programmed a position, wait for the mirror to stop its movement before re-positioning it.

5. Use the memory preset control to save the position. See **Memory Function** (page 147).

6. Put your vehicle into park (P).

## Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 251).

## Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 147).

## Auto-Dimming Feature (If Equipped)

The driver exterior mirror automatically dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.

## Direction Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the direction indicator.

## Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 251).

## INTERIOR MIRROR - VEHICLES WITHOUT: AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce the effect of bright light from behind.

## INTERIOR MIRROR - VEHICLES WITH: AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

**Note:** A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUN SHADE

### Opening the Sun Shade



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the sun shades. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sun shade controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.

**Note:** The sun shade opens when you open the moonroof.



Press and release the control to open the sun shade.

### Closing the Sun Shade



**WARNING:** When closing the sun shade, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the sun shade.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the sun shades. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sun shade controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.

**Note:** You can only close the sun shade if the moonroof is closed.



Press and release the control to close the sun shade.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE MOONROOF

### Opening the Moonroof



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.



Press and release the control to partially open the moonroof.

Press and release the control again to fully open the moonroof.

### Closing the Moonroof



**WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

## Moonroof

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.



Press and release the control to close the moonroof.

### VENTING THE MOONROOF



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Press and release the control to vent the moonroof.



Press and release the control to close the moonroof.

### MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

The moonroof stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

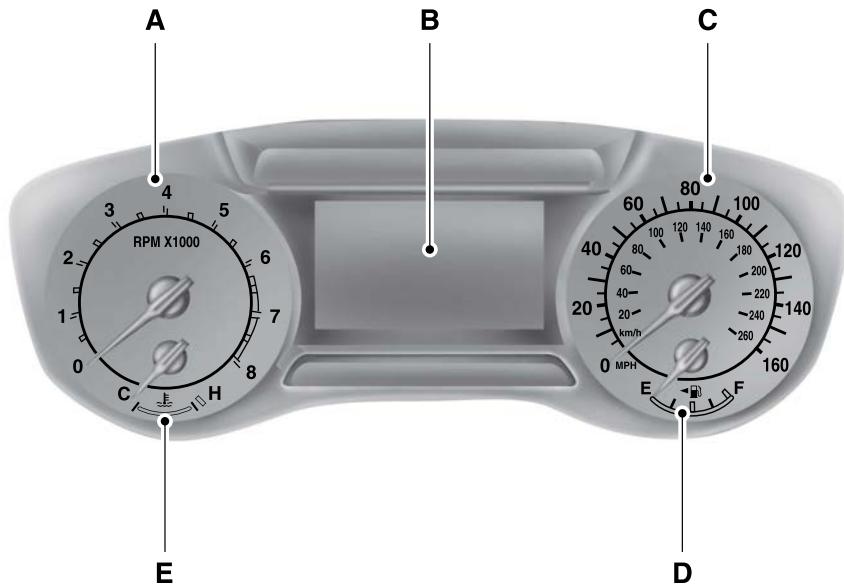


Press and hold the control within a few seconds to override bounce-back.

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Type 1 and 2

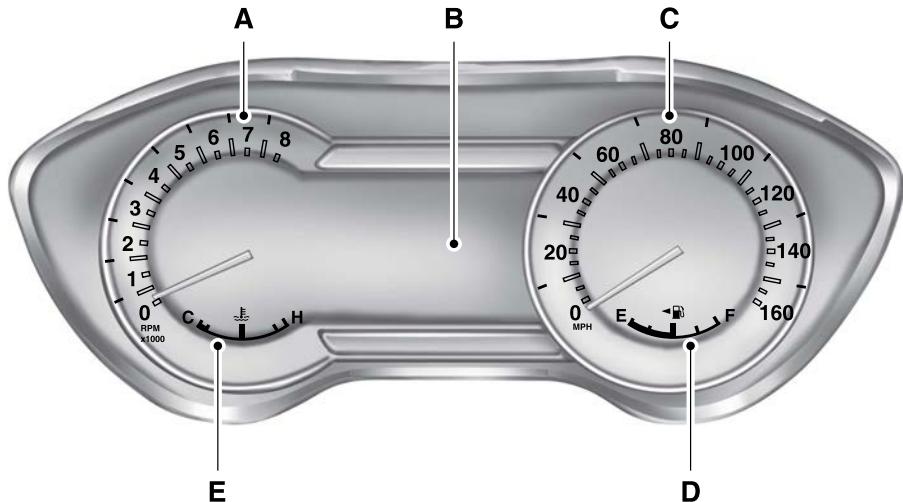


E144485

- A Tachometer
- B Information Display (Type 2 shown, Type 1 similar)
- C Speedometer
- D Fuel Gauge
- E Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

# Instrument Cluster

## Type 3



E152749

- A Tachometer
- B Information Display
- C Speedometer
- D Fuel Gauge
- E Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

### Information Display

#### Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

#### Compass

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

### Trip Computer

See **General Information** (page 103).

### Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 103).

# Instrument Cluster

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the center section. If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down.

**Note:** Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

## Fuel Gauge

**Note:** The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

### Variations:

Driving type (fuel economy conditions)	Fuel gauge position	Distance-to-empty
Highway driving	1/16th	56 km (35 mi) to 129 km (80 mi)
Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle)	1/16th	56 km (35 mi)

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

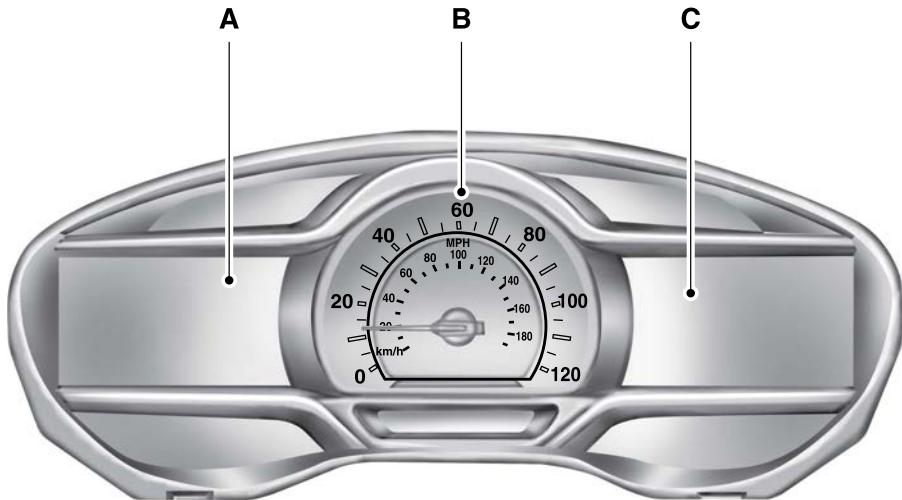
- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

### Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th.

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



E151261

- A Left Information Display
- B Speedometer
- C Right Information Display

### Left Information Display

#### Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display. Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

### Regen Active

A circular arrow symbol appears in the center of the battery gauge when energy is being recaptured through the regenerative braking system.

This feature can be switched on or off in the information displays settings menu. See **General Information** (page 103).

# Instrument Cluster

## Fuel Gauge:

**Note:** The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

## Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th.

## Variations:

Driving type (fuel economy conditions)	Fuel gauge position	Distance-to-empty
Highway driving	1/16th	56 km (35 mi) to 129 km (80 mi)
Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle)	1/16th	56 km (35 mi)

## Vehicle Settings and Personalization

### Display/Trip

See **General Information** (page 103).

### Information

See **General Information** (page 103).

### Settings

See **General Information** (page 103).

## Brake Coach Display:

The Brake Coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner which maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system. The percent displayed is an indication of the regenerative braking efficiency with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovery.

This feature can be switched on or off in the information displays settings menu. See **General Information** (page 103).

# Instrument Cluster

## Trip Summary:

Trip Summary displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The information is cumulative over the last trip. A new trip begins each time you start your vehicle (when the Ready to Drive message comes on). Corresponding trip efficiency leaves appear on the right information display.

- Distance - Displays the total distance traveled, distance traveled on battery power only (EV distance) and Regen distance. Regen distance is the estimated range gained from energy recaptured through regenerative braking.
- Energy Use - Displays the average fuel economy and total fuel used.
- Brake Score - The percent displayed is an indication of the regenerative braking efficiency for the trip.

## Right Information Display

### Entertainment

See **Entertainment** (page 392).

### Phone

See **Entertainment** (page 392).

### Navigation or Compass

See **Entertainment** (page 392).

### Fuel Economy

See **General Information** (page 103).

### Vehicle Range

Vehicle range indicates the estimated distance your vehicle will travel with the energy currently onboard.

The range shown is the estimated distance to empty based on the fuel remaining in the tank.

Changes in driving pattern and climate control use may cause the value to vary.

## Trip Efficiency Leaves

Trip Efficiency Leaves display upon shutting off your vehicle. The number of leaves represent the average for the last trip. A new trip begins each time you start your vehicle (when the Ready to Drive message comes on). Corresponding Trip Summary data displays on the left information display.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.

### Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

It illuminates white when the system is in standby mode. It illuminates green when you set the adaptive cruise speed.

### Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Instrument Cluster

## Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp

 If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Automatic High Beam Indicator

 It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## Auto-Start-Stop Indicator

 It illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.

 It illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

## Battery Warning Lamp

 If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Blind Spot Information System Indicator

 It illuminates when you switch the system on or in conjunction with a message.

## Cruise Control Indicator

 It illuminates when you switch the system on.

## Decklid Ajar Indicator

 It illuminates when the ignition is on and the decklid is not completely closed.

## Direction Indicator

 It flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

## Door Ajar Indicator

 It illuminates when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

## Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp

 It flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 205).

## Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp

 If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Engine Oil Pressure Warning Lamp

 **WARNING:** If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.

 It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

# Instrument Cluster

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Engine Oil Check** (page 319).

## Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp  
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The on-board diagnostics system has detected a malfunction to the emissions control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the diesel particulate filter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

## Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## Frost Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It illuminates when the outside air temperature is 4°C (39°F) or below.

## Fuel Operated Heater Enabled Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the fuel operated heater on.

## Fuel Operated Heater Operating Indicator



It illuminates when the fuel operated heater is currently in operation.

## Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting the engine.

## Grade Assist Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the grade assist on.

# Instrument Cluster

## Hazard Flasher Indicator



It flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

## High Beam Headlamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

## Hood Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

## Lane Keeping Alert Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

## Lane Keeping Aid Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the system activates.

## Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the liftgate is not completely closed.

## Low Beam Headlamp Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the low beam headlamps are on, this indicates that a low beam headlamp bulb has failed.

## Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when one or more of the tires are significantly under inflated. See **What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 353).

## Ready to Drive Indicator



It illuminates when you switch your vehicle on and it is ready to drive. A message may appear in the information display.

## Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp

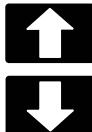


It illuminates if the system detects the diesel exhaust fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Instrument Cluster

## Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance, fuel economy or lower emissions.

## Speed Limiter Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the speed limiter on.

## Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



It flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

## Stop Safely Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle has an electrical component fault or failure that causes your vehicle to shutdown or enter into a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the information display.

## Traffic Sign Recognition No Passing Indicator



It illuminates when a no passing sign is detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

## Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Limit Indicator



It illuminates when the current speed limit is detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

It flashes if the traffic sign speed warning is enabled and you have exceeded the speed limit detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

## Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter. Immediately drain off the water.

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition.

### Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key, after the last door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.

### Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

# Instrument Cluster

---

## Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

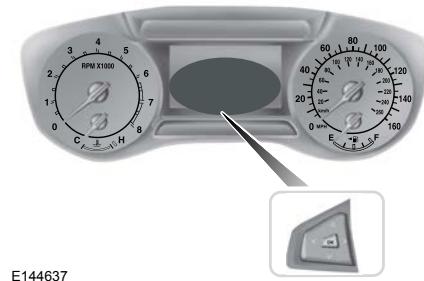


**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is not moving.

### Information Display Controls

#### Type 1



E144637

- Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through a menu.
- Use the left arrow button to go back or to exit.

- Use the **OK** button to make a selection.
- Use the right arrow button to display the submenu.

#### Trip computer 1

#### Trip computer 2

Dist to empty

AdBlue Info

AdBlue Range

AdBlue Refill

Trip odometer

Trip timer

Average fuel

Outside temp

All values

Dist to empty

Trip odometer

Trip timer

Average fuel

#### Fuel economy

Dist to empty

Instant fuel

Average fuel

Average speed

All values

Dist to empty

Instant fuel

Average fuel

Average speed

Auto StartStop

# Information Displays

<b>Driver assist</b>	
Traction control	
Local hazard info	
Active CityStop	
BLIS	
Cross traffic alrt	
Cruise control	
Driver alert	
Select. susp.	Sport
	Normal
	Comfort
Hill start assist	
Intelligent AWD	
Lane keeping	Mode
	Intensity
Pre-collision	Alert sensitivity
	Dist. indication
	Active braking
Front Park Pilot	
Rear Park Pilot	
Speed limiter	Manual
	Intelligent
	Tolerance
Traffic signs	Speed warning
	Speed Chime

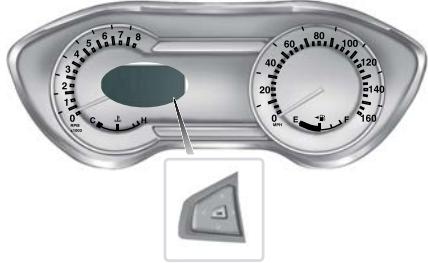
<b>Driver assist</b>	
	Tolerance
Tyre monitor	Tyre pressure
	Reset
<b>Settings</b>	
Vehicle settings	Alarm
	Auto engine off
	Chimes
	Easy entry/exit
	Lighting
	KeyFree
	Locks
	Power mirror
	Oil life reset
	Park heater
	Park lock ctrl
	Power liftgate
	Remote start
	Seatbelts
	Windows
	Wipers
MyKey	Create MyKey
	Emerg. Assist.
	Do not disturb
	Traction control
	Max speed
	Speed minder

# Information Displays

Settings	
Display	Volume limit
	Clear MyKeys
	Units
	Temp unit
	Tyre pressure
Language	

Trip computer
Trip computer 1
Trip computer 2
AdBlue Info
AdBlue Range
AdBlue Level

## Type 2



E182848

- Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through a menu.
- Use the left arrow button to go back or to exit.
- Use the **OK** button to make a selection.
- Use the right arrow button to display the submenu.

Fuel economy
Fuel economy
Average speed
Auto StartStop

Driver assist	
Traction control	
Local hazard info	
Active City Stop	
Adaptive steering	
BLIS	
Cross traffic alert	
Cruise control	
Driver alert	
Hill start assist	
Intelligent AWD	
Lane keeping	Mode
	Intensity
Pre-collision Assist	Alert sensitivity
	Distance indication
	Active braking

# Information Displays

Driver assist	
Front Park Pilot	
Rear Park Pilot	
Tyre monitor	Tyre pressure
	Reset
Speed limiter	Manual
	Intelligent
	Tolerance
Traffic signs	Speed warning
	Chime
	Tolerance

Settings	
	Windows
	Wipers
MyKey	Create MyKey
	Emergency Assistance
	Do not disturb
	Traction control
	Max speed
	Speed minder
	Volume limit
	Clear MyKeys
Display	Measure unit
	Temperature unit
	Tyre pressure
	Language

Settings	
Vehicle	Alarm system
	Drive control
	Chimes
	Easy entry/exit
	Auto engine off
	Lighting
	KeyFree
	Locks
	Mirrors
	Oil life
	Park heater
	Park lock control
	Power liftgate
	Remote start
	Seatbelts

## GENERAL INFORMATION - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



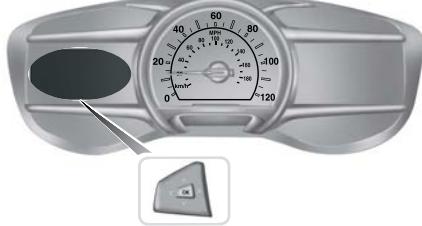
**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

# Information Displays

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

## Information Display Controls



E156010

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.

- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

### Main menu

From the main menu bar on the left side of the information display, you can choose from the following categories:



Display/Trip



Information



Settings

Scroll up or down to highlight one of the categories, and then press the right arrow key or **OK** to enter into that category. Press the left arrow key as needed to exit back to the main menu.

### Display/Trip



Use the up or down arrow buttons to choose between the following display options.

**Note:** *The cluster will remember the menu level 2 state when you change the key state from the RUN to the OFF position.*

Display/Trip				
Menu level 2	Menu level 3	Menu level 4	Menu level 5	
Engage (Split Power + Avg Fuel Economy + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge)	Help	—	—	
Empower	Help	—	—	

# Information Displays

Display/Trip			
(Power (with engine on/off threshold) + Avg Fuel Economy + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge)			
MyView (MyView + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge)	Change MyView	Vehicle Range	Vehicle Range
		Average fuel	Average fuel
		Split power	Instant fuel
		Power + Threshold	Coolant temp
		Tach rpm x 1000 + Avg MPG	Accessory power
		Accessory power	Trip computer 1
		Trip computer 1	Trip computer 2
		Trip computer 2	Fuel history
		Fuel history	Coach
		Coach	Average speed
		Blank	Blank
Help		—	—
Trip 1 & 2: Trip Data + Battery Gauge + Fuel Gauge	Help	—	—

## Engage

Engage provides separate gauges for engine power and high voltage battery power in kilowatts (kW). The engine power gauge fill is white and the high voltage battery power gauge fill is blue. You can also see an optional instantaneous fuel economy gauge. When your vehicle is operating on battery power only, you will see EV displayed and the gauges will appear in blue.

## Empower

Empower provides a power demand gauge in kilowatts (kW) which includes an engine on or off threshold.

# Information Displays

- When your vehicle is operating with battery power only (below the threshold), you will see EV displayed and the gauge fill is blue.
- When your vehicle is operating with both the engine and the high voltage battery providing power the gauge fill is white.
- When power demand surpasses the amber indicator, this level of demand and associated fuel economy displays in amber.
- When the engine is on, reducing power demand to less than the threshold will allow the engine to turn off.

You can also see an optional instantaneous fuel economy gauge.

**Note:** You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the **OK** button on the left hand steering wheel controls.

## MyView

You can choose what to display in this view. Selecting **Change MyView** in the options menu allows you to scroll through two columns of content choices.

- Press the up or down arrow to view content.
- Press **OK** to save your selected content.
- You must select content in both columns before you can save your new MyView.

Unique content available in MyView:

- Accessory Power—Indicates electrical power demands from your vehicle's accessory systems. Accessories use power but do not contribute to propelling your vehicle. The gauge separately displays power demand in kilowatts (kW) for climate and other accessories. Other includes all power being used by the low voltage accessories (cabin fans, headlights, heated seats, etc.).
- Coolant Temp – Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be white and will be in the normal range (between H and C). If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, the level indicator will change to red to indicate that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn your vehicle off and let the engine cool.
- Tach rpm x 1000 — When the gasoline engine is running, the tachometer gauge displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM). When your vehicle is operating on battery power only with the engine off, EV displays and the tachometer is greyed out.

**Note:** The trip data, and average fuel economy cannot be reset in MyView.

## Trip 1 & 2

Provides trip odometer, trip average fuel economy and trip timer.

Distance traveled on battery power only with the engine off is shown in blue next to total trip distance.

# Information Displays

## Information



In this mode, you can view different vehicle system information and perform a system check.

Information		
Warnings	Help	Displays a number of different system tutorials. Use the up or down arrows to scroll through the tutorials. Then press <b>OK</b> to view.
	MyKey	MyKeys (Number of MyKeys programmed)
		MyKey Miles (km) (Distance traveled using a programmed MyKey)
	Seatbelts	Displays the associated seat belt graphic.
	System check	All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Use the up or down arrow buttons to scroll through the list.

## Settings



In this mode, you can configure different driver setting choices.

**Note:** Some items are optional and may not appear.

**Note:** Some MyKey items will only appear if a MyKey is set.

Settings				
Menu level 2	Menu level 3	Menu level 4	Menu level 5	Menu level 6
Driver assist	Traction control	On or Off	—	
	Local hazard info			
	Active City Stop	On or Off	—	
	BLIS	On or Off	—	
	Pre-Collision	Alert Sensitivity	High, Normal or Low	
		Distance Indication	On or Off	

## Information Displays

Settings			
		Active Braking	On or Off
Cruise control		Adaptive or Normal	—
ECO cruise		On or Off	—
Driver alert		On or Off	—
Lane keeping sys.	Mode	Alert only or Alert + Aid	
	Intensity	High, Normal or Low	
Front Park Pilot		On or Off	—
Rear Park Pilot		On or Off	—
Traffic signs	Speed warning	On or Off	
	Speed Chime	On or Off	
	Tolerance	Speed Warning Tolerance	
Speed limiter	Manual	—	
	Intelligent	—	
	Tolerance	—	
Tyre monitor	Tire Pressure	—	
Vehicle	Alarm	Settings	Full or Reduced
		Reminder on Exit	On or Off
	Auto Engine Off	On or Off	—
	Chimes	Park Slot - check enabled or uncheck disabled	—
		Information - check enabled or uncheck disabled	—
	Easy Entry / Exit	On or Off	—

# Information Displays

Settings				
Lighting	Adaptive hdlamps	Traffic setup	Right Hand Traffic or Left Hand Traffic	
	Auto highbeam	On or Off		
	Daytime Lights	On or Off		
	Headlamp delay	Select time interval		
KeyFree	Hold <b>OK</b> to switch on or off			
Locks	Auto lock	On or Off		
	Auto unlock	On or Off		
	Relock	On or Off		
	Mislock	On or Off		
	Remote unlocking	All doors or Driver door		
Mirrors	Auto fold	On or Off		
	Reverse tilt	On or Off		
Park lock control	On or Off	—		
Power liftgate	On or Off	—		
Seatbelts	Seatbelts	—		
Remote start	Select a setting			
Swicth inhibit	On or Off			
Tyre mobility kit	Select number of years			
Windows	Remote open	On or Off		
	Remote close	On or Off		
Wipers	Courtesy wipe	On or Off		
	Rain sensing	On or Off		
MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold <b>OK</b> to Create MyKey		
	Emerg. assist.	Always On or User Selectable		

# Information Displays

Settings		
	Traction control	Always On or User Selectable
	Max speed	Choose desired speed or off
	Speed minder	Choose desired speed or off
	Volume limit	On or Off
	Do Not disturb	On or Off
	Clear MyKeys	Hold <b>OK</b> to Clear All MyKeys
Display	Language	Select the desired language - Hold OK to Set
	Units	Measure unit
		Miles & GAL, l/100km or km/l
	Brake coach	Temperature unit
		Fahrenheit (°F) or Celsius (°C)
	Regen active	On or Off
	Driving History	Hold OK to Reset

## Right-hand Information Display Controls

- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm your selection.

### Main menu

From the main menu bar on the right side of the information display, you can choose from the following categories:

### Entertainment

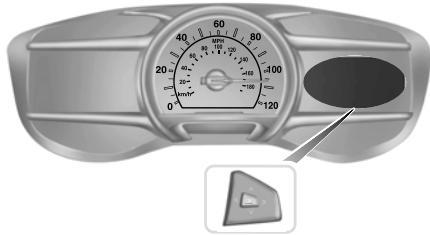
See **General Information** (page 384).

### Phone

See **General Information** (page 384).

### Navigation or Compass

See **General Information** (page 384).



E179396

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.

# Information Displays

## Fuel Economy

Use the up or down arrow buttons to

**Note:** The information display will remember the menu level 2 state when you change the individual key state from the RUN to the OFF position.

Fuel Economy			
Menu level 2	Menu level 3	Menu level 4	Menu level 5
Efficiency leaves	Help	—	—
Fuel History (Instantaneous Fuel Economy + Fuel Economy History + Avg Fuel Economy)	Duration	5, 10 or 30 minutes	—
	Help	—	—
Coach	Help	—	—

### Efficiency Leaves

Efficiency leaves indicate short term driving efficiency measured over the last few minutes. The more leaves and vines that appear on the display, the better your fuel economy. Leaves and vines will occasionally appear and disappear to indicate a change in your driving efficiency.

### Fuel History

From left to right this view includes an instantaneous fuel economy gauge, historical fuel economy data and average fuel economy. The historical data represents an average over time intervals of either 1, 2 or 6 minutes, with the leftmost interval being the most recent. Shown at the bottom of the view is the total time duration for the 5 intervals. You can select total duration in the options menu. Intervals shown in grey color are from the previous drive. The blue horizontal line represents the average fuel economy value shown to the right.

**Note:** Hold **OK** to reset fuel history and average fuel economy.

choose between the following display options.

### Coach

This view provides a comparison of your recent acceleration, braking and cruising behavior, then recommends the most efficient use of energy under present conditions. The horizontal bars fill from left to right with best behavior and appear blue when at least half full. When the bars are less than half full, the color is amber, suggesting that you need a change in your driving behavior to achieve better energy efficiency.

**Note:** Fuel Economy will be impacted by your use of brakes, accelerator and accessories, as well as environmental conditions such as hills and weather.

**Note:** Fuel economy is not always a measure of appropriate driving behavior. For example, when driving uphill and maintaining an appropriate speed, your instant fuel economy may not be good (losing leaves) but the Coach may show a blue bar for Acceleration and Cruising.

# Information Displays

## Common Displays

Both Average fuel economy and an instantaneous fuel economy gauge are included in Engage, Empower and MyView (if selected) on the left-hand information display. They are also included in Fuel History on the right-hand information display.

### Average Fuel Economy

Average Fuel Economy is continuously averaged since the last reset. You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the **OK** button on the corresponding steering wheel controls.

**Note:** Average fuel economy cannot be reset in MyView.

### Instantaneous Fuel Economy

If your instantaneous fuel economy is greater than the maximum value displayed, a + sign will be shown next to the maximum scale number. When your vehicle is operating on battery power only, EV will display and the gauge fill will show in blue.

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

### Active City Stop

Message	Description
Active City Stop Auto braking	The system is applying the brakes.
Active City Stop Sensor blocked Clean screen	The system sensors are blocked.
Active City Stop Sensor blocked Clean screen	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Active Park Assist

Message	Description
Active Park malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Description
Adaptive cruise malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Adaptive cruise not available	The system is not available. See <b>Using Adaptive Cruise Control</b> (page 228).
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	The radar has reduced visibility. See <b>Using Adaptive Cruise Control</b> (page 228).
Cruise control active Automatic braking turned off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.
Front sensor not aligned	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Adaptive cruise Driver resume control	The adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.
Adaptive cruise Speed too low to activate	Your vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.
Adaptive cruise Shift down	The adaptive cruise is adjusting the gap distance. Shift into a lower gear.

## Airbag

Message	Description
Occupant sensor blocked Remove objects near passenger seat	The system has malfunctioned due to a blocked sensor. Remove blockage.

## Alarm

Message	Description
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 66).

# Information Displays

## All-Wheel Drive

Message	Description
AWD temporarily disabled	The system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD off	The system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD restored	The system resumes normal function and clears this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD malfunction Service required	The system is not properly operating. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Description
Engine stops in {seconds to shut off:#0} seconds	The engine is getting ready to shut off.
Engine stops for fuel economy	The engine has shut off to help increase fuel economy.
Engine stops in {seconds to shut off:#0} seconds OK = override	The engine is getting ready to shut off. You can press OK on the left steering wheel button to override the shut down.

## Automatic High Beam Control

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Auto-Start-Stop

Message	Description
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press the clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Press any pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Shift into neutral (N) to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation. Shift into park (P) to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning. Restart the engine.
Auto StartStop not available	The system is not available. See <b>Unique Driving Characteristics</b> (page 165).
Auto StartStop malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Battery and Charging System

Message	Description
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Information Displays

Message	Description
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Switch the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message clears when you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Switch the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message clears when you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered.
Low battery Features temporarily turned off	The battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Your vehicle disables various features to help preserve the battery. Switch off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage.

## Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert Systems

Message	Description
BLIS malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 251).
Vehicle coming from left Vehicle coming from right	The system detects a vehicle. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 251).
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 251).
Cross traffic system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Brake System

Message	Description
Check brake system	The system has malfunctioned. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Diesel Engine

Message	Description
Engine warming Please wait {seconds:00} seconds	In extremely cold weather, typically below -26°C (-15°F) and if the engine block heater is not utilized, the engine does not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds. This restriction allows the engine to circulate the oil properly in order to avoid engine damage.

## Doors and Locks

Message	Description
Driver door open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Liftgate open	
Boot open	The luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Bonnet open	The hood is not completely closed.
Switches inhibited Security mode	The system has disabled the door switches.
Child lock malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Driver Alert

Message	Description
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	We recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.

# Information Displays

## Electric Parking Brake

Message	Description
Park brake malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake not released Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System over-heated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the electric parking brake.
Park brake applied	The electric parking brake is applied.
Park brake released	The electric parking brake is released.

## Engine

Message	Description
Engine coolant overtemperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reduced engine power	The engine has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Stop safely now	The engine has malfunctioned. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Fuel System

Message	Description
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check fuel fill inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Fuel pressure low	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Water in fuel Drain filter	The system detects there is excess water in the fuel filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Fuel door opening	Wait for up to 15 seconds if the fuel system depressurizes.
Fuel door open	The fuel system has finished depressurizing and you can begin to refuel.
Close fuel door	A reminder to close the fuel door.
Refuel error See manual	There is an error in attempting to refill your vehicle.

## Fuel-Operated Parking Heater

Message	Description
Park heater not started Low fuel level	The current fuel level is too low for the parking heater to operate.
Park heater not started Outside temperature too high	The current outside temperature is too high for the parking heater to operate.
Park heater not started Vehicle not started over 7 days	Start the engine to operate the parking heater.
Park heater not started Low battery state of charge	The current battery state of charge is too low for the parking heater to operate.
Park heater timer enabled	A timer has been enabled for the parking heater. See <b>Auxiliary Heater</b> (page 136).

# Information Displays

---

## Headlamps

Message	Description
Check adaptive head-lamps See manual	Displays if an electrical malfunction occurs with the headlamp system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Hill Start Assist

Message	Description
Hill start assist not available	The system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 209).

## Lane Keeping System

Message	Description
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests you to keep your hands on the steering wheel.

# Information Displays

## Maintenance

Message	Description
Engine oil level low Add oil	The engine oil level is low. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 319). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Engine oil pressure low	The engine oil pressure is low. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 319). If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Change engine oil soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 319).
Oil change required	The oil life left is at 0%. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 319).
Brake fluid level low	The brake fluid level is low or the brake system has malfunctioned. See <b>Brake Fluid Check</b> (page 325). Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Power reduced to lower engine temperature	The engine has reduced power to help reduce high engine temperature.
Transport mode Contact dealer	Transport mode is on. This may not allow some features to properly operate. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Factory mode Contact dealer	Factory mode is on. This may not allow some features to properly operate. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## MyKey

Message	Description
MyKey not created	The system fails to create a MyKey.
MyKey active Drive safely	You are using a MyKey.
Speed limited to {my key limit metric:#0} km/h	MyKey speed limit is on.
Speed limited to {my key limit imperial:#0} mph	

## Information Displays

Message	Description
Check speed Drive safely	You are using a MyKey and the MyKey speed limit is on.
Vehicle near top speed	You are using a MyKey and your vehicle speed is approaching the MyKey speed limit.
MyKey Vehicle at top speed	You have reached the MyKey speed limit.
Buckle up to unmute audio	You are using a MyKey and your seatbelt is not fastened. Fasten your seatbelt to unmute audio.

## Parking Aid

Message	Description
Check front Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check rear Park Pilot	
Parking aid malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Pre-Collision Assist

Message	Description
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Pre-Collision Assist</b> (page 257).

## Remote Control

Message	Description
Key battery low Replace soon	The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Seats

Message	Description
Memory recall not permitted while driving	Memory seats are not available when driving.
Memory {0} saved	Displays where you have saved your memory setting.

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System

### Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) Level

Message	Description
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the diesel exhaust fluid tank becomes empty. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the diesel exhaust fluid tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the diesel exhaust fluid tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the diesel exhaust fluid tank. The minimum AdBlue refill quantity required to restart the engine is 5 L (1.1 gal).

**Note:** When filling the diesel exhaust fluid tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased diesel exhaust fluid level is registered.

**Note:** If your vehicle is on a slope, the minimum diesel exhaust fluid refill quantity required to restart the engine may be greater than 5 L (1.1 gal).

# Information Displays

## Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) System Malfunction

Message	Description
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Stability Control

Message	Description
ESC Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Starting System

Message	Description
Full accessory power active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.
Press brake to start	A reminder to press the brake pedal when starting your vehicle.
Press clutch to start	A reminder to press the clutch pedal when starting your vehicle.
Press brake and clutch to start	A reminder to press the brake and clutch pedals when starting your vehicle.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start.
No key detected	The system does not detect a valid passive key inside your vehicle.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

Message	Description
Restart now or key is needed	Displays if you switch the engine off and the system does not detect a valid passive key inside your vehicle.
Engine start pending Please wait	The starter is attempting to start your vehicle.
Pending start cancelled	The system has cancelled the pending start.

## Steering System

Message	Description
Steering loss Stop safely	The system has malfunctioned. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist malfunction Service required Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Description
Tyre pressure low	One or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	The system has malfunctioned or the spare tire is in use. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Towing

Message	Description
Trailer lighting module malfunction See manual	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer sway Reduce speed	Your trailer sway control has detected trailer sway. Reduce your speed.
Tow bar unlocked Towing prohibited See manual	Swivel the tow ball arm again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Tow Ball</b> (page 276).
Tow bar malfunction Towing prohibited Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tow bar not activated Start engine and retry	The vehicle battery may not have a full charge. Start the engine, and then swivel the tow ball arm. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Tow Ball</b> (page 276).
Tow bar extended Check trailer wiring	Check the trailer wiring. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Traction Control

Message	Description
Spinout detected Hazards activated	A spinout has occurred and the hazard flashers are on.

## Traffic Sign Recognition

Message	Description
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	Displays when system performance is reduced due to current driving conditions. See <b>Traffic Sign Recognition</b> (page 255).

# Information Displays

---

## Transmission

Message	Description
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission Service required	
Transmission overtemperature Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow the transmission to cool. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission overheating Stop safely	
Transmission too hot Press brake	
Transmission limited function See manual	The transmission has limited functionality. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission warming up Please wait	Displays at low outside temperatures, if it takes a few seconds for the transmission to engage a gear. Fully press the brake pedal until the message disappears from the information display.
Transmission not in Park	A reminder to shift into park (P).
Press brake pedal	Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission.
Transmission Adapt-Mode	The transmission is adjusting the shift strategy.
Transmission adjusted	The transmission has adjusted the shift strategy.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup on	The transmission is locked.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup off	The transmission is unlocked.
Park will engage at low speed	The transmission prepares to shift into park (P) when you reach a certain speed.
Stay in neutral mode Press brake to unlock shifter	Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission.

## Information Displays

---

Message	Description
Select S to confirm Stay in neutral mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Sport not available in selected gear	The transmission cannot shift into sport (S) in the current gear.
Invalid gear selection	Displays when you shift into an invalid gear at a certain speed.

# Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

## WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

## REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

## ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Switch **System** on.

**Note:** To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 370).

## REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

**Note:** The turn signal lamps flash twice.

**Note:** The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

**Note:** The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

**Note:** All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

**Note:** The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

**Note:** A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

### Climate Control Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

**Note:** If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

**Note:** If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

# Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

---

**Note:** You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

## Heated Seat Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Front seats**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

## Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Duration**.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

### Climate Control Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.

4. Select **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

**Note:** If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

**Note:** If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the engine.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

## Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Front seats & steer.**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** If you switch the heated seat and steering wheel settings to **Auto**, the heated seats and steering wheel turn on during cold weather.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the heated seat and steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the engine.

## Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Remote start**.
4. Select **Duration**.

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

### Switching the Climate Control On and Off



### Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off



**Note:** The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates.

**Note:** Recirculated air could turn off or be prevented from turning on in all air flow modes except maximum cooling to reduce the risk of the windows fogging up. It could also turn on and off when you direct air to the instrument panel or footwell air vents during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

### Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

### Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



**Note:** When you switch maximum defrost on, the heated windshield, heated rear window and air conditioning turn on. The blower motor is set to the highest speed.

**Note:** When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.

### Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off (If Equipped)



**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

### Switching Auto Mode On and Off



The system controls the blower motor speed and direction of air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

Press and hold the control for a few seconds to switch dual mode off.

### Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Press and release + or - to set the volume of air circulated in the passenger compartment.

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



### Setting the Temperature

Press and release + or - on the left-hand side of the climate control to set the left-hand temperature.

Press and release + or - on the right-hand side of the climate control to set the right-hand temperature.

# Climate Control

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with directing air to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

**Note:** You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

**Note:** When you select automatic mode and the outside temperature is low and the engine is cold, air is directed to the windshield and the outer instrument panel air vents.

**Note:** When you select automatic mode and the outside temperature and in-vehicle temperature is high, the system temporarily selects recirculated air to maximize cooling.

**Note:** When you select maximum defrost, air conditioning turns on and air is directed to the windshield air vents.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

- Press **AUTO**.
- Select the required temperature.

**Note:** Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Press **MAX A/C**.

**Note:** To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Press **AUTO**.
- Select the required temperature.

### Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Select maximum defrost.

### Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin Ice

- Select maximum defrost.

### HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.

**Note:** The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

# Climate Control

## HEATED REAR WINDOW

 Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage to the heated rear window grid lines.

## HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

## AUXILIARY HEATER

 **WARNING:** We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the fuel-operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options, your vehicle may not come equipped with a remote transmitter.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

Used correctly the system will:

- Keep the windows clear of ice in the event of frost and prevent condensation.
- Avoid cold starts to assist the engine to reach operating temperature sooner.

**Note:** Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, behind the right front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud, and any other blockages to avoid issues with heater operation.

**Note:** The time and date on your vehicle's clock must be set correctly.

## Programming the Fuel-Operated Parking Heater (If Equipped)

### Principles of Operation

Each mode is an independent operation and has its own duration. The heater may run or continue running for any of the modes in an overlapping manner. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 103).

**Note:** If you request the heater to start and it does not respond with the ignition off, an explanation may appear in the information display when you switch the ignition on.

### Heater Modes

**Note:** For you to program and enable any timer mode, you must check all pertinent boxes in the information display menu. This includes the box for the programming level menu and the box(es) for applicable heater mode menus.

**Note:** The system chooses AM, PM or the 24-hour clock based on the preference you choose in the information display.

# Climate Control

## Automatic Mode

The system automatically enables the heater mode, not by user request. The heater starts automatically if the engine is running and if other conditions are satisfied within a few seconds after you start the engine. The heater may cycle on and off based on the coolant temperature during the entire drive cycle. Before you start a petrol engine, you may need to set the climate controls to a heating mode. See **Climate Control** (page 134).

After the engine starts, the only two ways the user can disable this specific heater mode are to switch the engine off or press the off button on the transmitter.

## One Time Mode

Allows you to perform one heating cycle for a specific day. If conditions permit, the heater starts within 30 minutes prior to the set day and time to attempt to heat the cabin.

## Time 1 and Time 2 Modes

There are two programmable timers available. Each timer mode allows you to set different heating cycles for each day of the week. These times remain stored and the system warms up your vehicle according to the timer mode selected.

## Continue Heat Mode

If you check this box in the cluster menu, as soon as you switch the ignition off the heater starts or continues running if conditions permit. The heater continues running in this mode regardless of future ignition cycles for up to 30 minutes.

You can start the heater immediately by checking the Continue Heat box and switching the engine off and on.

**Note:** You can use this mode to maintain a warm cabin after you switch the ignition off. After the heater completes this mode, the cluster menu resets to unchecked.

## Remote Transmitter Mode

**Note:** Protect the transmitter from moisture and water, strong impact, and direct sunlight to provide the longest useful lifetime.

The fuel-operated parking heater transmitter allows the user to remotely request the heater to start and run for up to 30 minutes or to stop all heater modes upon demand, regardless of ignition status or engine status.

To request the heater to start using the remote transmitter: Press and hold the On or Heat button on the transmitter until a green LED light illuminates on the transmitter. If the ignition is off for up to 10 seconds during a pre-start evaluation period, the information display provides indications that the park heater is running. However, if conditions do not permit the heater to start, the indications disappear. If you switch the ignition off before 30 minutes have lapsed, the heater stops automatic mode but keeps running the remainder of the remote transmitter mode.

To request the heater to stop all modes by remote transmitter: Press and hold the Off button on the transmitter for a few seconds until a red LED light illuminates on the transmitter. This applies only for the heater mode running at the present time. Future Timer settings or future Continue Heat settings do not disable.

**Note:** The LED light on the remote transmitter does not indicate the actual status of the heater. The light does not guarantee the heater received a signal to start or stop.

# Climate Control

---

After you press and hold the On or Heat button for a few seconds:

- Solid Green: Indicates the transmitter sent a radio signal.
- Flashing Green: Indicates the transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.
- Solid Orange (2 seconds) then Solid Green (2 seconds): Indicates the transmitter sent the radio signal, but the battery is weak.
- Solid Orange (2 seconds) then Flashing Green (2 seconds): Indicates the transmitter did not send a radio signal due to a weak battery.
- Flashing Orange: Indicates a low transmitter battery.

After you press and hold the Off button for a few seconds:

- Solid Red: Indicates the transmitter successfully sent an off signal.
- Flashing Red: Indicates the transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.
- Solid Orange (2 seconds) then Solid Red (2 seconds): Indicates the transmitter sent the radio signal, but the battery is weak.
- Solid Orange (2 seconds) then Flashing Red (2 seconds): Indicates the transmitter did not send a radio signal due to a weak battery.
- Flashing Orange: Indicates a low transmitter battery.

**Note:** The maximum range of the transmitter signal is about 300 meters. Electronic devices that operate in the same frequency may affect the range.

**Note:** Up to three transmitters can be paired to your vehicle.

## General Requirements

**Ambient Air Temperature:** The heater may start by Automatic Mode only if the ambient air temperature is below 5°C (41°F). For other heater modes, the heater may start only if the ambient air temperature is below 10°C (50°F) for petrol-fueled vehicles and below 15°C (59°F) for diesel-fueled vehicles.

**Note:** If you own a petrol-fueled vehicle, and you do not operate the heater for an extended number of days, it is possible that the heater may require more than one start attempt due to fuel evaporation.

**Note:** If you own a diesel-fueled vehicle, it is necessary to use a low temperature fuel to effectively operate the heater in extremely cold temperatures.

**Battery State of Charge:** The vehicle battery must be at least 60% charged for the heater to start. An older or weakened vehicle battery may also result in issues. If you connect a battery charger to the vehicle battery and it provides excessive voltage generally more than 15.5 volts, then the heater may not be able to start or it may stop running.

**Fuel Level:** The heater may not start if the fuel level is low or parking your vehicle on a steep hill.

**Coolant Temperature:** The heater starts and stops automatically. The coolant temperature target the heater is trying to reach is 80°C (176°F).

**Time:** All heater modes, except for Automatic Mode, are limited to a maximum 30 minute duration each. You can attempt a re-start using the remote transmitter after you switch the heater off.

**Information:** The engine start-stop function does not affect the heater operation and is not considered an engine off state for heater operation purposes.

## Switching Off or Disabling the Heater

Before re-fueling your vehicle:

- Uncheck all of the heater boxes in the information display menu.
- Switch off the engine.
- Press and hold the Off button on the transmitter until a red LED light illuminates on the transmitter.
- Place the transmitter in a secure location.

**Note:** *The heater turns off when you switch the engine off. A message does not appear in the information display, there is no noise from the heater and no exhaust from the heater exhaust pipe.*

**Note:** *While the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise for up to 3 minutes.*

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



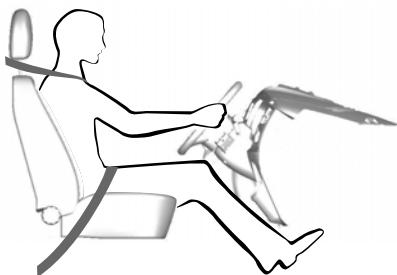
**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



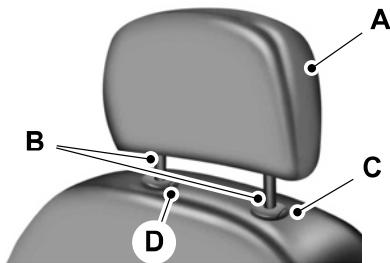
**WARNING:** Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

# Seats

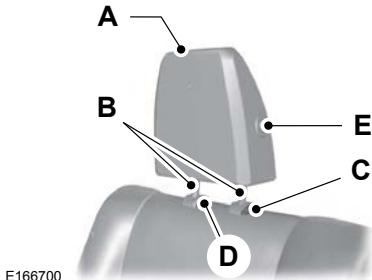


**WARNING:** When using a forward facing child restraint on a rear seat, always remove the head restraint from that seat.

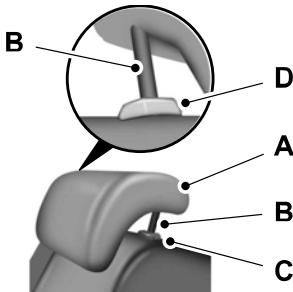
## Front seat head restraints



## Rear seat center head restraint



## Rear seat outboard head restraints



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
- E Fold button (rear seat center only)

## Adjusting the Head Restraint

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

### Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

### Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

### Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

# Seats

## Folding the Head Restraint

**Note:** The rear seat center head restraint may fold forward for improved visibility.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a dog guard, make sure the folding center head restraint is in the upright position before installing the dog guard. See **Load Carrying** (page 265).

1. Press and hold button E.
2. Pull it back up to reset.

## Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## Tilting Head Restraints

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

## MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 4-WAY MANUAL SEAT



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

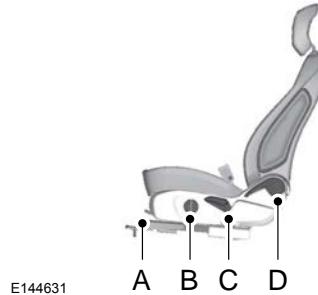


**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.



**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

The manual front seats may consist of:



E144631

- A Bar to move the seat backward and forward.
- B A rotary control to adjust the lumbar of the seat backrest.
- C A lever to adjust the height of the seat.
- D A lever or rotary control to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

# Seats

## MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 8-WAY MANUAL SEAT



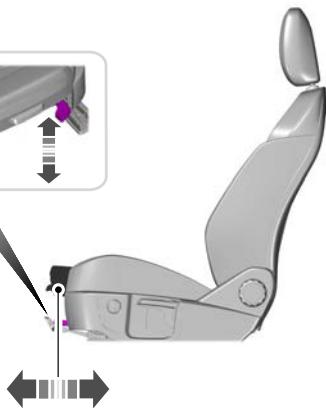
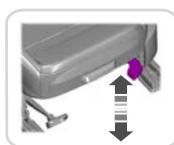
**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

### Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

### Adjusting the Seat Cushion



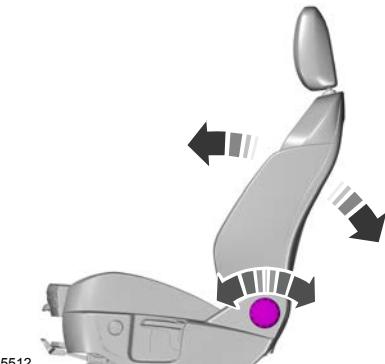
E265511



E265510



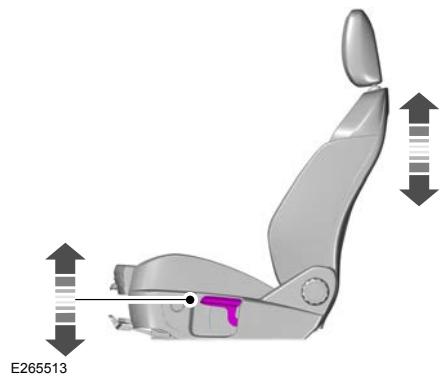
### Adjusting the Seat Backrest



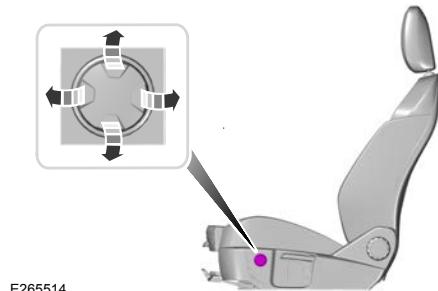
E265512

## Seats

### Adjusting the Seat Height



### Adjusting the Lumbar Support



E265514

### POWER SEATS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: MULTI-COLOUR SEATS

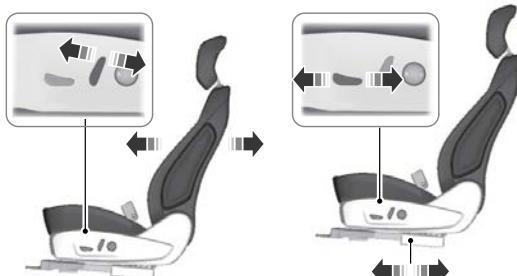


**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.



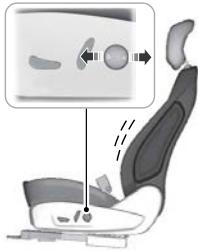
**WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

# Seats



E144632

## Power Lumbar (If Equipped)



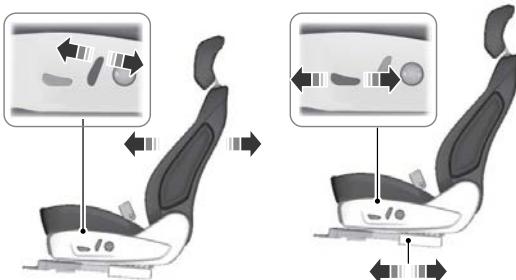
E165608

## POWER SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: MULTI-COLOUR SEATS

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the front seat or seatback while your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

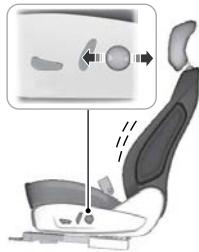
**WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

# Seats



E144632

## Power Lumbar



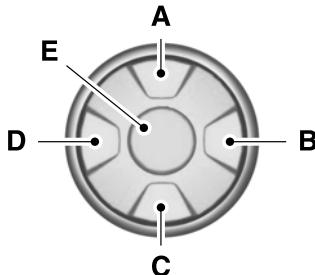
E165608

## Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active Motion (If Equipped)

**Note:** The massage system will turn off after 20 minutes.

**Note:** The engine must be running or the vehicle must be in accessory mode to activate the seats.

**Note:** Allow a few seconds for any selection to activate. The seatback and cushion massage cannot function at the same time.



# Seats

	<b>Massage mode</b>	<b>Lumbar and bolster mode</b>
A	Back massage intensity adjustment	Upper lumbar
B	Massage intensity decrease and off*	Lumbar decrease
C	Cushion massage intensity adjustment	Lower lumbar**
D	Massage intensity increase	Lumbar increase
E	On and off	-

\*The massage feature will default to an alternating massage mode with back massage intensity adjustment. The lumbar and bolster feature will default to the middle lumbar mode.

\*\*Press C a second time to adjust the back bolster. Press C a third time to adjust the cushion bolster.

You can also adjust this feature through the touchscreen.



Press the Menu Settings icon, then Vehicle. Choose Multi-Contour Seats.

When switched on, the system displays directions for you to adjust the lumbar settings in your seat or to set the massage function.

To access and make adjustments to the lumbar setting:

1. Choose the desired seat to adjust.
2. Press the + or - to adjust the lumbar intensity.

To access and make adjustments to the massage setting:

1. Press the Menu Settings icon, then Vehicle. Choose Multi-Contour Seats.
2. Choose the desired seat to adjust.
3. Press OFF, LO or HI.

## MEMORY FUNCTION



**WARNING:** Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



**WARNING:** Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature automatically recalls the position of the driver seat, power mirrors and power steering column. The memory control is located on the driver door.



## Saving a PreSet Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the seat, exterior mirrors and steering column to your desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions. You can save a memory preset at any time.

## Recalling a PreSet Position

Press and release the preset button associated with your desired driving position. The seat, mirrors and steering column move to the position stored for that preset.

**Note:** You can only recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) (and your vehicle is not moving) if the ignition is on.

You can recall a preset memory position by pressing the unlock button on your remote control or intelligent access key if it is linked to a preset position.

## Linking a PreSet Position to Your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key

Your vehicle can save the preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or intelligent access keys.

1. With the ignition on, move the memory positions to the desired positions.
2. Press and hold the desired preset button for about five seconds. A tone sounds after about two seconds. Continue holding until a second tone is heard.
3. Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

**Note:** Pressing any active memory feature adjustment control – power seat, mirror, or optional steering column switch or any memory button – during a memory recall cancels the operation.

A seat recall movement will also stop if you drive your vehicle.

**Note:** If more than one linked remote control or intelligent access key is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key stored.

## Easy Entry and Exit Function

If you enable the easy entry and exit feature, it automatically moves the driver seat position rearward up to five centimeters when the transmission is in park (P) and you remove the key or turn off the keyless start ignition.

The driver seat returns to the previous position when you put the key in the ignition or you activate the keyless start ignition.

# Seats

You can switch off the easy entry and exit feature by using the driver information display.

## REAR SEATS

**Note:** Your vehicle may have split seatbacks that you must fold individually.

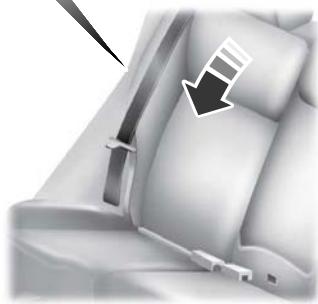
**Note:** Make sure the center safety belt is unbuckled before folding the seatback.

To lower the seat back(s) from inside the vehicle, do the following:



E144634

1. Pull the handle to release the seatback.
2. Push the seatback forward.



E164098

3. Stow the safety belt in the stowage clip. This will prevent the safety belt from getting caught in the seat latch.

When raising the seat back(s), make sure you hear the seat latch into place.

## HEATED SEATS

### Front Seats



**WARNING:** People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must use caution when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.

## Seats

Do not place anything on the seat that may block the heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This can cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This damages the heating element and can cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that may block the heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This can cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This damages the heating element and can cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

**Note:** The heated seats will only function when the engine is running.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

**Note:** After 90 minutes of operation, the heated seats switch off. Press the heated seat symbol to switch the heated seats on.

### Rear Seats (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must use caution when using the heated seat. The heated seat may

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

**Note:** The heated seats will only function when the engine is running.

The rear seat heat controls are on the rear of the center console.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

## CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS

### Heated Seats

# Seats



**WARNING:** People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must use caution when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that may block the heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This can cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This damages the heating element and can cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



Press the heated seat symbol on the touchscreen to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

**Note:** After 60 minutes of operation, the heated seats switch off. Press the heated seat symbol to switch the heated seats on.

## Cooled Seats

The cooled seats only function when the engine is running.



Press the cooled seat symbol on the touchscreen to cycle through the various cool settings and off. More indicator lights indicate cooler settings.

**Note:** After 60 minutes of operation, the cooled seats switch off. Press the cooled seat symbol to switch the cooled seats on.

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

**Note:** *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

**Note:** *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

## SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Rear Occupant Alert** on or off.

**Note:** *The default setting is on.*

**Note:** *Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.*

## Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

## Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

### REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

### REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

# Auxiliary Power Points

## 12 Volt DC Power Point



**WARNING:** Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

**Note:** Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the power point and may blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

## Location

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the front of the center console.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the luggage compartment.

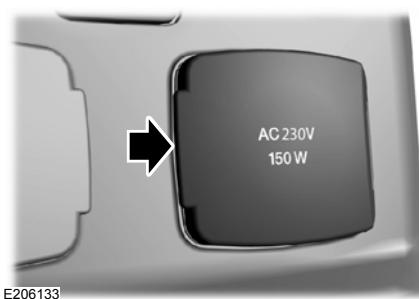
## 230 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** The power point turns off when you switch the ignition off, or when the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.

You can use the power point for electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.



## Auxiliary Power Points

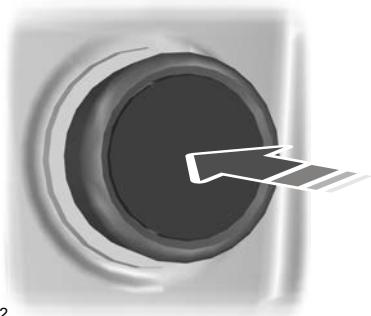
When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on and a device is plugged in.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off or no device is plugged in.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It pops out after a short period of time.

Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

**Note:** If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

**Note:** If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may run out of charge.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

## CIGAR LIGHTER



**WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

# Storage Compartments

---

## CUP HOLDERS

**Note:** Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.



**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.



**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



### Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

### Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

### Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. An indicator light on the button illuminates when the ignition is on and when the engine starts.

**Note:** *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

**Note:** *A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING THE ENGINE

### Starting a Diesel Engine - Automatic Transmission, Vehicles With: Push Button Start

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

### Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

### Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

### Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The green ready indicator illuminates letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

## Restarting the Engine After Stopping it

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

### Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary - Automatic Transmission, Vehicles With: Push Button Start

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

### Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: Push Button Start

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving - Automatic Transmission, Vehicles With: Push Button Start

**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving - Manual Transmission, Vehicles With: Push Button Start

**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down the vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

### Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Switch **Auto engine off** on or off.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

### Overriding Automatic Engine Stop

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp  
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages

Message	Action
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Starting and Stopping the Engine - Frequently Asked Questions - Gasoline

### Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

### Why does the engine not crank?

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

### Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

### Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

**Note:** The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

### Why does the system not detect a passive key?

If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 50).

## Starting and Stopping the Engine - Frequently Asked Questions - Diesel, Vehicles With: Push Button Start

### Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

### Why does the engine not crank?

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

## Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).



2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

## Why does the system not detect a passive key?

If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page 50).

# Unique Driving Characteristics

## HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

This hybrid vehicle combines electric and gasoline propulsion to provide performance and efficiency. It requires no special fuels and you never have to plug it in.

**Note:** You may notice higher engine speeds upon start-up. This temporary condition is normal and necessary to heat up the cabin and minimize emissions.



**Starting:** Switch the ignition on while your transmission is in park (P). The green ready indicator light appears in the instrument cluster, letting you know that the vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because this vehicle is equipped with silent key start. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running. This indicator remains on while the vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate the vehicle is capable of movement (using the electric motor, engine or both). Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, you make a climate control change, or you press the accelerator.

**Driving:** The gas engine automatically starts and stops to provide power when needed and to save fuel when not needed. While coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop, or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and the vehicle operates in electric-only mode. Conditions that may cause the engine to start up or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Vehicle speed above 85 mph (137 km/h). However, the maximum speed for electric-only operation may be lower while driving in hot temperatures or on hilly terrain.

- Ascending a hill.
- Charge level of high voltage battery is low.
- Very high or low outside temperature (to provide system cooling or heating).
- Engine not warm enough to provide passenger requested cabin temperature.

**Stopping:** The gas engine may shut off to conserve fuel as you come to a stop. Restarting the vehicle is not required. Simply press the accelerator when you are ready to drive.

**Transmission Operation:** Due to the technologically advanced, electronically-controlled continuously variable transaxle, you will not feel shift changes like those of a non-hybrid vehicle.

**Note:** Since engine speed is controlled by the transmission, it may seem elevated at times. This is normal hybrid operation and helps deliver fuel efficiency and performance.

**Neutral:** We do not recommend idling the vehicle in neutral (N) for an extended period of time because this discharges your high voltage battery and reduces fuel economy. The engine will not start, and cannot provide power to the hybrid system in neutral (N).

**Low Gear:** Low gear (L) is designed to mimic the enhanced engine braking available in non-hybrid vehicles. Low gear produces high engine speeds to provide necessary engine braking. This is normal and does not damage your vehicle. In low gear, the gas engine remains on more often than in drive (D).

## Unique Hybrid Operating Characteristics

Your vehicle behaves differently compared to a non-hybrid. Here is a description of the major differences:

# Unique Driving Characteristics

---

**Battery:** Your hybrid is equipped with a high voltage battery. A cool battery ensures battery life and provides the best possible performance.

Cabin air cools the high voltage battery by pulling air through vents in the rear package tray. Avoid placing objects on the package tray which could block air flow through the vents.

If you leave your vehicle inoperative for over 31 days, it may be necessary to jumpstart the vehicle. See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 286).

**Engine:** The engine speed in your hybrid is not directly tied to your vehicle speed. Your vehicle's engine and transmission are designed to deliver the power you need at the most efficient engine speed. During heavy accelerations, your hybrid may reach high engine speeds (up to 6000 RPM).

In prolonged mountainous driving, you may see the engine tachometer changing without your input. This is intentional and maintains the battery charge level. You may also notice during extended downhill driving that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off.

During this engine braking, the engine stays on, but it is not using any fuel. You may also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric generator in the hybrid system.

During certain events (such as vehicle servicing) your low voltage 12-volt battery may become disconnected or disabled. Once the battery is reconnected and after driving the vehicle, the engine may continue to operate for three to five seconds after you switch it off. This is a normal condition.

**Braking:** Your hybrid is equipped with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Your transmission performs regenerative braking and captures brake energy then stores it in your high voltage battery.

## Driving To Optimize Fuel Economy

**Note:** *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

Your fuel economy should improve throughout your hybrid's break-in period. As with any vehicle, your driving habits and accessory usage can significantly impact your fuel economy. For best results, keep in mind these tips:

- Keep the tires properly inflated and only use the recommended size.
- Aggressive driving increases the amount of energy required to move your vehicle. In general, you can achieve better fuel economy with mild to moderate acceleration and deceleration. Moderate braking is particularly important since it allows you to maximize the energy captured by the regenerative braking system.

### Additional Tips:

- Do not carry extra loads.
- Be mindful of adding external accessories that may increase aerodynamic drag.
- Observe posted speed limits.
- Perform all scheduled maintenance.
- There is no need to wait for your engine to warm up. The vehicle is ready to drive immediately after starting.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

## Frequently Asked Questions

Question	Answer
What are the series of clicks from the cargo area when I first turn the key in the ignition?	The high voltage battery is electrically isolated from the rest of the vehicle when the key is off. When you turn the key to on, high voltage contactors inside the battery close to make the electricity available to the motor/generator and enable the vehicle to drive. The clicks are the sound of these contactors as they close and open during start up and shut down.
Why does the engine sometimes start at key-on?	The vehicle's computer determines if an engine start is required at key-on. Silent key start starts the engine if it is necessary for cabin heating, windshield defrost, or if the outside temperature is low.
Why does it take a long time before the engine shuts down?	There are several reasons the engine stays on for an extended amount of time when you first start it. One common reason is to ensure that the emissions components are warm enough to minimize tailpipe emissions. As the climate gets cooler, this engine-on time extends.
Why does my engine never shut down above 85 mph (137 km/h)?	The engine is required to turn on above this speed to protect the transmission hardware.
Why does my engine stay on when it is extremely cold outside?	In order to ensure that the climate control system can begin heating the cabin or defrosting the windshield as soon as a driver requests it, the engine coolant temperature has to be kept sufficiently hot. Keeping the engine on is required to maintain the correct minimum temperature.
Why does my engine rev up so high sometimes when I accelerate?	Your vehicle's engine and transmission are designed to deliver the power you need at the most efficient engine speed. This may be higher than expected during heavy accelerations, and may fluctuate during steady state driving. These are characteristics of the Atkinson engine cycle and the transmission technology that help maximize your hybrid's fuel economy.

## Unique Driving Characteristics

Question	Answer
What is the fan noise I hear from the rear of my hybrid?	The fan noise comes from a fan located outside the high voltage battery. This fan turns on when the battery requires cooling air. The fan speed and associated noise level changes, according to the amount of cooling required to maintain good performance. Maintaining the battery temperature at optimal conditions also prolongs the useful life of the battery and helps to achieve better fuel economy. Do not place objects on the package tray which could block air flow through the hybrid vehicle battery cooling vents.
How far can I go in Electric Drive if I run out of gas?	We do not recommend running out of gas. However, you may be able to go about one mile, driving at 30 mph (48 km/h), if the battery has a normal state of charge.
Can I put E15 or E85 in my vehicle, and how will it affect my fuel economy?	Your hybrid vehicle can use E15 (15% ethanol, 85% gasoline) fuel, but you may notice slightly reduced fuel economy because ethanol contains less energy per gallon than gasoline. Your hybrid vehicle is not designed to use E85 (85% ethanol).
How long will my high voltage battery last? Does it need maintenance?	The high voltage battery system is designed to last the life of the vehicle and requires no maintenance.
Can you charge the battery with a plug into an A/C outlet?	There are no provisions for charging the high voltage battery from a power supply external to the vehicle.
Can I tow the hybrid behind my motor home with all four wheels down?	Yes. You can flat tow your hybrid vehicle without modification.

### ECOSELECT

#### About EcoSelect

EcoSelect is a drive mode that is designed to help you reduce fuel consumption. It changes the way that some vehicle systems operate to make your vehicle more efficient.

When you drive with EcoSelect switched on, you could notice:

- Changes in engine behavior.
- Reduced acceleration performance.
- Reduced blower motor speed.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

---

## Switching EcoSelect On and Off



Press the button.

**Note:** It remains on until you switch it off.

## EcoSelect Indicator



Illuminates when you switch  
EcoSelect on.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

**Note:** *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) or neutral (N) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

---

## Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions

### Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral to restart the engine.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

## AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

---

## Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions

### Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

## FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE



**WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



**WARNING:** Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

# Fuel and Refueling



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

**Note:** We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

## Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

## FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL



**WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



E268503

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

**Note:** We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

## Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

## FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is under the luggage compartment floor covering.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

**Note:** If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.

# Fuel and Refueling

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container



**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container



**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



**WARNING:** Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.



**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 177).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

- Fully open the fuel filler door.
- Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.



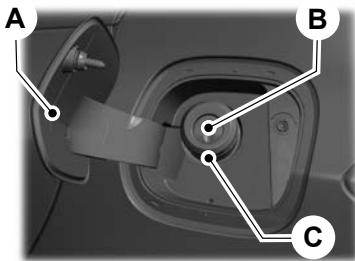
- Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
- Remove the fuel filler funnel.
- Fully close the fuel filler door.
- Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

# Fuel and Refueling

## REFUELING

### Refueling System Overview



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel tank filler valve.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

### Refueling Your Vehicle



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

## Fuel and Refueling

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

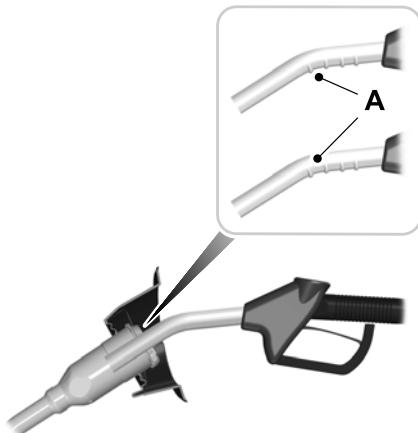
**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

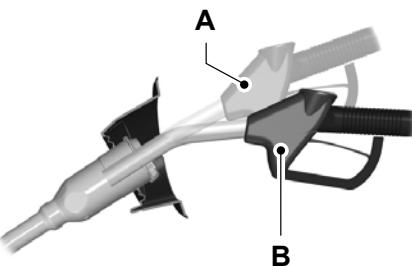
**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

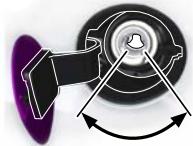


E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

# Fuel and Refueling

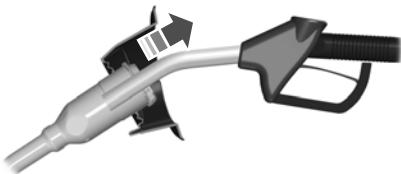
A



B



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## Refueling System Warning (if Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the information display.

Message
Check fuel fill inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 177). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO<sub>2</sub> and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing.

# Fuel and Refueling

---

## Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 362).

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

## Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function.

The first 1,500 km (1,000 mi) of driving is the break-in period of the engine. A more accurate measurement is obtained after 3,000 km (2,000 mi).

## Impacting Fuel Economy

- Incorrect tire inflation pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 351).
- Fully loading your vehicle.
- Carrying unnecessary weight.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol. See **Fuel Quality** (page 177).
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You may get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

# Engine Emission Control

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 286).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not use leaded fuel.
- Avoid running out of fuel.

**Note:** Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 97).

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTANT SYSTEM

Your vehicle has a selective catalytic reductant system. This reduces exhaust emission levels by injecting AdBlue® into the exhaust system. The engine does not start if you tamper with or disable the selective catalytic reductant system.

For the system to correctly operate, you must maintain the fluid level.

**Note:** When you switch the engine off the selective catalytic reductant system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.

# Engine Emission Control

## AdBlue® Guidelines

- Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.
- Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.
- Do not dilute with water or any other liquid.
- Do not re-use an empty fluid container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).
- Do not store fluid containers in your vehicle.
- The fluid is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.
- Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

## Filling the AdBlue® Tank



E204215

The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

## Filling in Cold Climates

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).*

**Note:** *If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.*

# Engine Emission Control

## Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump



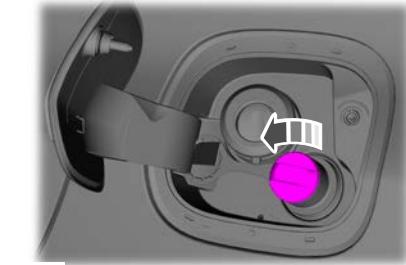
**WARNING:** Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.



**WARNING:** Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhalating ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

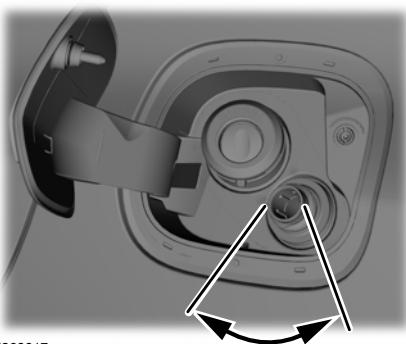
Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



E268809

2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.



E268817

4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

**Note:** *The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.*

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Container



**WARNING:** Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

# Engine Emission Control

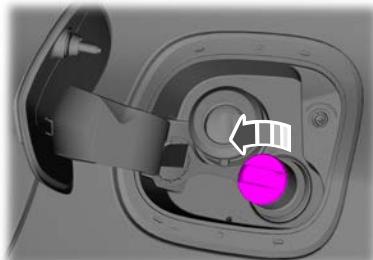


**WARNING:** Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout on to the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.



E268809

3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

**Note:** The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.

7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## AdBlue® Consumption

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

You can find information about the selective catalytic reductant system in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 103).

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

# Engine Emission Control

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the

warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System Information Messages

### AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display. See <b>Information Displays</b> (page 103).

**Note:** When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.

**Note:** If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.

# Engine Emission Control

## AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

To reduce the risk of causing damage to the gasoline particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration

Particles in the exhaust gas collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles in the exhaust gas into harmless gases.

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Passive regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust gas temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

# Engine Emission Control

To assist passive regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

**Note:** A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display on some vehicles.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps and Indicators



Malfunction indicator lamp.

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages

Message	Action
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears.</li><li>• Avoid prolonged engine idling.</li><li>• Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.</li></ul>
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a moderate speed.</li><li>• Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration.</li><li>• Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.</li></ul>

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

# Engine Emission Control

**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a diesel particulate filter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. It filters harmful diesel particulates, for example soot from the exhaust gas.

To avoid damaging the diesel particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 289).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps or information messages regarding exhaust system cleaning and regeneration.

**Note:** This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this indicates that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Engine coolant temperature warning lamp.



Ignition warning lamp.



Malfunction indicator lamp.



Powertrain warning Lamp.



Water in fuel warning lamp.

If you continue to drive your vehicle with a warning lamp illuminated, the engine could stop without warning. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 97).

## Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

# Engine Emission Control

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain correct operation. The emission control system automatically carries out this process. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot that gathers inside the filter is cleaned in two different ways, passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver. During automatic regeneration, the system cleans the diesel particulate filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning happens during normal engine operating conditions at varying levels depending on driving conditions.



Diesel particulate filter warning lamp.

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a warning lamp or information message appears in the information display. Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning.

The warning lamp continues to illuminate until the automatic regeneration process completes. Continue to drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning until the warning lamp turns off.

Failure to carry out regeneration when required could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, the system disables the ability to carry out regeneration. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Where vehicle use meets any of the following conditions:

- Driving short distances.
- Prolonged engine idling.

- Frequently switching the engine on and off.
- High levels of acceleration and deceleration.

We recommend you assist the regeneration process by:

- Avoiding prolonged engine idling.
- Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective cleaning. Drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes.



If the soot load in the diesel particulate filter reaches a critical level, the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates with the diesel particulate filter warning message. A service regeneration must be performed to recover the particulate filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to prevent further damage.

Automatic regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the soot particles. During cleaning, soot particles are converted to harmless gasses. Once cleaned, the diesel particulate filter continues to trap harmful diesel particles.

If you are driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to indicate automatic regeneration is in progress.

If you are not driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to instruct you to drive in a manner that allows automatic regeneration.

## Engine Emission Control

---

The automatic regeneration process is most effective when you drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes. The frequency and duration of the regeneration process varies by how you drive your vehicle, the outside air temperature and altitude. Frequency varies between 160 km (100 mi) and 500 km (310 mi) and each regeneration process lasts between 10 and 20 minutes.

**Note:** *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

**Note:** *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you could smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during the regeneration process. This is normal.*

# High Voltage Battery

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** The high voltage battery does not require regular service maintenance.

Your vehicle consists of various high voltage components and wiring. All of the high voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies which are labeled as such or that are covered with a solid orange convolute, orange striped tape or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

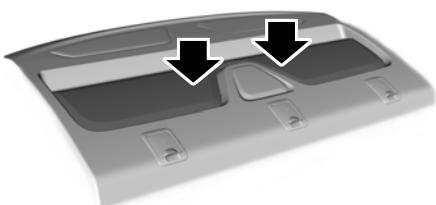
The high voltage battery system is a high voltage, lithium-ion battery system. The pack is located in the rear cargo area.

## High Voltage Battery Air Vents

The high voltage battery system uses an air-cooled system to regulate the high voltage battery temperature and help maximize high voltage battery life.

The high voltage battery is equipped with air vents that help to regulate its temperature. It is important to keep these openings free of obstructions.

## 4 Door



E159505

The high voltage battery air vents are in the package tray behind the rear seats.

**Note:** Do not block the flow of cabin air to this area.

## Wagon



The high voltage battery air vents are in the side trim panels next to the rear seats.

**Note:** Do not block the flow of cabin air to this area.

# High Voltage Battery

## High Voltage Service Disconnect

The high voltage service disconnect turns off power from the high voltage battery.

There is a disconnect circuit in your vehicle. Disconnecting the circuit will automatically disable the high voltage battery.

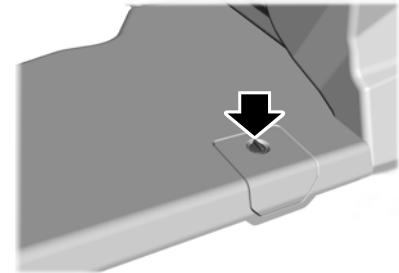
To disable the battery and stop all high voltage electric activity in the vehicle, you can access the high voltage disconnect circuit. To do this, you must unplug the circuit from the circuit port connected to the battery.

The service disconnect is equipped with an outer lever. This is to aid in properly seating the service disconnect lever. Remove this to disconnect the high voltage service disconnect.

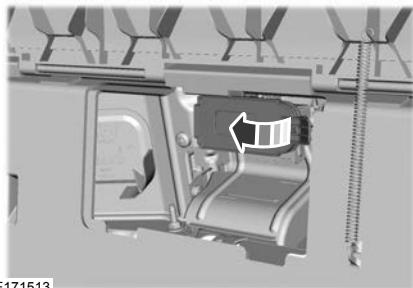
The high voltage service disconnect is located behind the rear fold down seats.

### Disabling the High Voltage Battery

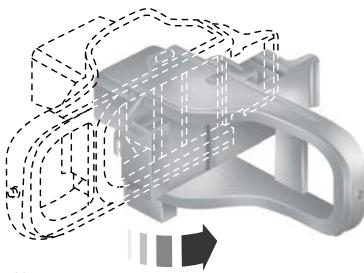
1. Fold down the rear seats.
2. Locate the access door and remove the plastic cover.



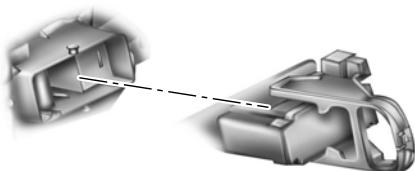
3. Pull the outer cover off to expose the service disconnect lever.



4. Slide the handle on the service disconnect outboard to the right.



5. Pull the handle toward you and remove the circuit from the vehicle to disable the high voltage battery.



# High Voltage Battery

---

6. Reverse this procedure to reinstall the high-voltage service disconnect and the outer lever to the service disconnect.

## Reactivating the High Voltage Battery

**Note:** If you have manually disconnected your high voltage shut off circuit, you need to reconnect the circuit before you can reactivate it. The vehicle will detect if the electrical system is safe and reactivate automatically. If you have manually disconnected your high voltage shut off circuit, you need to reconnect the circuit before you can reactivate it.

## HIGH VOLTAGE SHUTOFF SWITCH

The integrity of the high voltage system is continuously monitored. After a substantial collision or physical jolt, the high voltage system could become deactivated. To reinitialize the system.

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to turn the ignition off.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button.
3. If your vehicle is not powered on after this sequence, repeat steps 1 and 2 up to two more times.

**Note:** During this process, your vehicle will detect if the electrical system is safe and reactivate. Once your vehicle determines the electrical system safe, you can start your vehicle as you would normally by either turning the ignition key or by pressing the brake in combination with the **START/STOP** button.

**Note:** In the event your vehicle does not reactivate after the third key cycle, contact an authorized dealer.

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### General Information

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

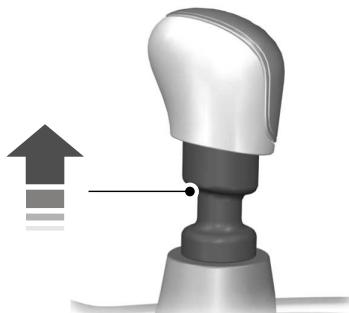
Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

If any gear is not fully engaged, fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

### Shifting Into Reverse Gear

Do not shift into reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV), 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to first gear. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

# Transmission

## Understanding the Shift Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

### Putting your vehicle in or out of gear:



E144820

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
3. Come to a complete stop.
4. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in park (P).

### Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning.

### Reverse (R)

With the gearshift lever in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

### Neutral (N)

With the gearshift lever in neutral (N), your vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

**Note:** Do not leave your vehicle in neutral (N) when the ignition is in the ON position for an extended time. Doing so can drain the high voltage battery and create starting problems.

### Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through all forward gears.

### Grade Assist



E146092



To activate Grade Assist, press the button on the gearshift lever. The grade assist indicator light illuminates in the instrument display.

The grade assist feature:

- Provides additional grade braking with a combination of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging to help maintain vehicle speed when descending a grade.
- As your vehicle determines the amount of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging, you may notice the engine speed increasing and/or decreasing to help maintain your vehicle speed when descending a grade.

To deactivate Grade Assist, press the button on the gearshift lever when Grade Assist is active. The grade assist light deactivates.

# Transmission

## Low (L)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- The transmission may be shifted into low (L) at any vehicle speed.
- Not intended for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

## Brake-Shift Interlock

**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

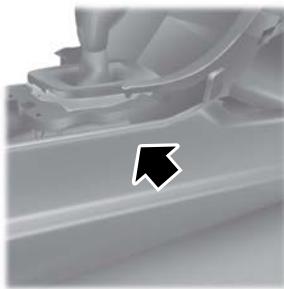
**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** See your authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

**Note:** For some markets this feature is disabled.

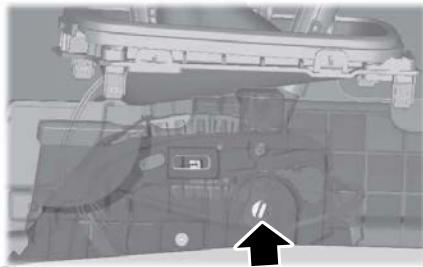
Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the gearshift lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a dead battery.

Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition off before performing this procedure.



E155984

1. Remove the side panel on the right side of the gearshift lever.



E155985

2. Locate the access hole.



E155983

# Transmission

3. Insert the screwdriver (or similar tool) into the access hole and press the lever forward when pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.
4. Remove the tool and reinstall the panel.
5. Start the vehicle and release the parking brake.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

**P R N D S**

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

### Park (P)

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the transmission in this position.

Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could automatically apply when you shift into park (P). See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 205).

### Reverse (R)



**WARNING:** Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

### Neutral (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle has the ability to roll freely. If you intend to leave your vehicle, make sure you apply the parking brake.

# Transmission

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the transmission in this position.

## Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal position for driving.

## Sport (S)

In sport (S), the transmission selects the optimum gear for best performance.

## SelectShift™ (If Equipped)

### About SelectShift™

Use this feature to upshift or downshift using the paddle shifters.

### Using SelectShift™

You can only use this feature in drive (D) or sport (S).



Pull the right paddle (+) to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (−) to downshift.

In sport (S), hold the right paddle (+) to switch the feature off.

**Note:** SelectShift in drive (D) provides temporary manual control of the gear selection.

## Automatic Return to Park

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- You unlatch the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

**Note:** This feature does not operate when your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

**Note:** Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency.

## Stay in Neutral Mode

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N) when you switch your vehicle off. Use this mode if you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off at an automatic car wash.

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode.

# Transmission

---

## Entering Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Power your vehicle on. See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 158).
2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** An instructional message appears.

5. Press the sport (S) button.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode and the neutral (N) button on the transmission selector flashes.

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

## Exiting Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

## Entering Stay in Neutral Mode - Failure to Start

Use this feature to move the transmission selector out of park (P) if you cannot start the vehicle.

**Note:** This feature does not function if the vehicle battery charge is low.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

1. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the brake pedal. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Fully press the accelerator pedal. Keep the accelerator pedal fully pressed.

4. Shift from park (P) to neutral (N).

5. Press the sport (S) button.

6. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode and the neutral (N) button on the transmission selector flashes.

7. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.

**Note:** Now your vehicle can freely roll.

8. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** The transmission returns to park (P) if the vehicle battery charge is low.

To return to park (P), press the brake pedal and shift into park (P).

# All-Wheel Drive

## USING ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

All-wheel drive uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

**Note:** A warning message appears in the information display when an AWD system fault is present. See **Information Messages** (page 115). An AWD system fault will cause the AWD system to default to front-wheel drive only mode. When this warning message is displayed, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer

**Note:** A warning message appears in the information display if the AWD system has overheated. See **Information Messages** (page 115). This condition may occur if the vehicle was operated in extreme conditions with excessive wheel slip, such as deep sand. To resume normal AWD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location and stop the engine for at least 10 minutes. As the engine restarts and the AWD system has adequately cooled, the warning message turns off and normal AWD function returns.

Do not use a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided. If the mini-spare tire is installed, the AWD system may disable automatically and enter front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. This condition is indicated by a warning in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 115). If there is a warning message in the information display from using the spare tire, this indicator should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced normal road tire and cycling the ignition off and on. It is recommended to

reinstall the repaired or replaced road tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive or damage the AWD system.

### Driving on Snow and Ice



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

**Note:** Excessive tire slippage can cause driveline damage.

AWD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide when driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an AWD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

## All-Wheel Drive

---

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. Since your vehicle is equipped with a four wheel (ABS), do not pump the brakes. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 204), for more information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system (ABS).

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 335).

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

## Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Shift the transmission to park (P) (automatic transmission) or to a low gear (manual transmission), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the dealer for service.

## Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

## Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock brake system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

The anti-lock brake system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

## Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery is running out of charge.

Your vehicle has an electric parking brake. You operate it with a switch instead of a lever. The switch is on the center console or to the left-hand side of the steering wheel, on the lower part of the instrument panel.

**Note:** The electric parking brake makes noises during operation. This is normal.

### Applying the Electric Parking Brake



Pull the switch upward.



The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** It remains illuminated for a short period of time after you switch the ignition off.

If it continues to flash or does not illuminate, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could automatically apply when you shift into park (P). See **Automatic Transmission** (page 199).

### Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency

**Note:** Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.



The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

### Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Switch the ignition on.

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Push the switch downward.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Brakes

## Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.



Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Close the driver door.

## Electric Parking Brake Information Messages

Message	Action
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the parking brake.

## Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery is running out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 289).

Message	Action
Park brake off	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake on	The electric parking brake is applied.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery is running out of charge.

Your vehicle has an electric parking brake. You operate it with a switch instead of a lever. The switch is on the center console.

**Note:** The electric parking brake makes noises during operation. This is normal.

### Applying the Electric Parking Brake



Pull the switch upward.



The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** It remains illuminated for a short period of time after you switch the ignition off.

If it continues to flash or does not illuminate, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

### Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency

**Note:** Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.



The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on.

# Brakes

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

## Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Switch the ignition on.

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Push the switch downward.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.



Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Close the driver door.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the parking brake.

**Note:** *The electric parking brake could release if you release the clutch pedal and press the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in neutral.*

## Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery is running out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 289).

## Electric Parking Brake Information Messages

Message	Action
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Brakes

Message	Action
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake off	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake on	The electric parking brake is applied.

## HILL START ASSIST



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

When the system is active, your vehicle remains stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The system releases the brakes automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

**Note:** *The system only functions when you bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) when facing downhill and first gear (1) when facing uphill.*

**Note:** *There is no warning light to indicate the system is either on or off.*

### Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system activates automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for about two to three seconds. This hold time automatically extends if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes automatically.

**Note:** *When you remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the pedal again when the system is active, you will experience significantly reduced brake pedal travel. This is normal.*

### Switching the System On and Off

#### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

#### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

# Traction Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL



**WARNING:** The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

### Switching Traction Control On or Off

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 103).

**Note:** *The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.*

**Note:** *If you switch traction control off, stability control remains on.*

**Note:** *The system turns off if there is a malfunction.*

### Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the system off.

### Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Stability Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNING:** The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system does this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This helps to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

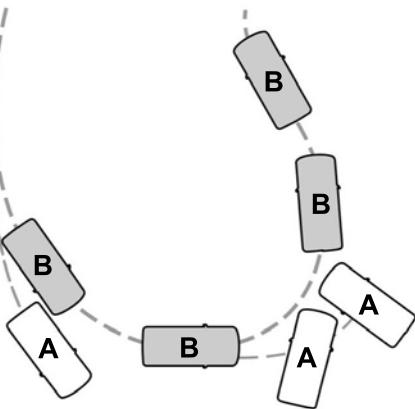
**Note:** *The system turns off if there is a malfunction.*

### Stability Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



- A Without stability control.
- B With stability control.

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** Some accessories such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

**Note:** The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See **Principle of Operation** (page 51).

We recommend that you take some time to get to know the system and its limitations by reading this section.

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.



You can turn the system on or off by pressing the parking aid button. If your vehicle does not have a parking aid button, the system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 103).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on.

See **Information Messages** (page 115).

## REAR PARKING AID

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 30 cm (12 in) away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects a stationary or receding object farther than 30 cm (12 in) from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.

# Parking Aids



Coverage area of up to 1.8 m (6 ft) from the rear bumper. There may be decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R):

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) or less.
- Your vehicle is not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 30 cm (12 in) away from the bumper.

## Obstacle Distance Indicator (if Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. The distance indicator displays when the transmission is in reverse (R).

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

## FRONT PARKING AID (if EQUIPPED)

The front sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P) and your vehicle is traveling at low speed.



Coverage area of up to 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. The coverage area decreases at the outer corners.

When your vehicle approaches an object, a warning tone sounds. When your vehicle moves closer to an object, the warning tone repeat rate increases. The warning tone sounds continuously when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

# Parking Aids

You can switch the system off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 103). If your vehicle has a parking aid button, you can switch the system off by pressing the button.

## Obstacle Distance Indicator (if Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display.

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks turn grey.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the front sensing system provides audio warnings when your vehicle is moving and the detected obstacle is moving towards your vehicle. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning stops after two seconds. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear (for example, low (L), sport (S) or any forward gear in a manual transmission), the front sensing system provides audio and visual warnings when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and an obstacle is inside the detection area. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning stops after two seconds and the visual indication stops after four seconds. If the obstacles detected are within 30 cm (12 in), the visual indication remains on.

If the transmission is in neutral (N), the system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving at 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and an obstacle is inside the detection area. Once your vehicle is stationary, the visual indication stops after four seconds.

## SIDE SENSING SYSTEM



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

The system uses the front and rear outermost parking aid sensors to detect objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle. The system displays them on a virtual map in the information display as your vehicle moves past them.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover up the sensors.

# Parking Aids

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

The system may not function if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on within a few seconds.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.

**Note:** If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.

**Note:** Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

To reinitialize the system, you may have to drive your vehicle approximately 3 m (10 ft).

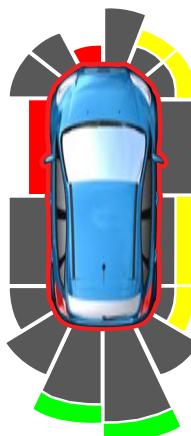


The sensor coverage area is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle.

When the system detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

**Note:** The system does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear sensor.

## Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

# Parking Aids

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audible warnings and a visual indication when detected objects are within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds.

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds and the visual indication turns off after four seconds.

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides a visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below. For example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



**WARNING:** Active park assist does not apply the brakes under any circumstances.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Active park assist is a multi-step process and may require you to shift the transmission multiple times. Follow the onscreen instructions until the parking maneuver is complete.

If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system by grabbing the steering wheel, or by taking full control of your vehicle after pressing the active park assist button.

Keep your hands, hair, clothing and any loose items clear of the steering wheel when using active park assist.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover up the sensors.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves. The sensors may falsely detect objects due to ultrasonic interference caused by motorcycle exhausts, truck air brakes or horns, for example.

**Note:** If you change any tires, the system must recalibrate and may not correctly operate for a short time.

# Parking Aids

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- You use a spare tire or a tire that is significantly worn more than the other tires.
- One or more tires are incorrectly inflated.
- You try to park on a tight curve.
- Something passes between the front bumper and the parking space. For example, a pedestrian or cyclist.
- The edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground. For example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck.
- The weather conditions are poor. For example, during heavy rain, snow, fog, high humidity and high temperatures.

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached an add-on accessory close to the sensors on the front or rear of your vehicle. For example, a bike rack or trailer.
- You have attached an overhanging object to the roof. For example, a surfboard.
- The front bumper, rear bumper or the side sensors are damaged.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle. For example, a mini-spare tire.

## Using Active Park Assist

### Selecting an Active Park Assist Mode

 Press the button once to activate parallel parking. Press the button a second time to activate perpendicular parking. If you press the button again the system switches off.

If your vehicle is parked and after you switch the ignition on, you can use the information display to toggle through the modes. Press the button to switch the system on and open the system menu in the information display.

**Note:** If your vehicle is parked, the default mode is parallel park out assist. However, if you did not use active park assist to parallel park your vehicle, use the information display to select park out assist.

**Note:** You can repeatedly press the active park assist button to toggle through the modes only after moving your vehicle approximately 10 m (33 ft).

To toggle through the modes, use the buttons on the information display to select the following:

- Parallel parking.
- Perpendicular parking.
- Parallel park out assist.
- Switch the system off.

**Note:** There is no time limit for toggling through the modes.

### Parallel Parking

The system detects available parallel parking spaces and steers your vehicle into the space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you into a parallel parking space.



Press the button once to search for a parking space.

**Note:** You can also switch the system on after you have already driven partially or completely past a parking space. Press the active park assist button and the system informs you if you have recently passed a suitable parking space.

# Parking Aids

When the vehicle speed is less than 35 km/h (22 mph), the system scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. A message and a graphic appear in the information display to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

**Note:** *The system scans both sides of your vehicle and offers parking spaces one side at a time if you do not use the direction indicator.*

**Note:** *The system defaults to the passenger side if you do not use the direction indicator.*



Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** *If you drive your vehicle less than 0.5 m (2 ft) or greater than 1.5 m (5 ft) away from other parked vehicles, the system may not be able to detect an available parking space.*

When the system detects a suitable space, a message displays and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the onscreen instructions. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may have to move forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

**Note:** *You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.*

**Note:** *The system always offers the last parking space it detects. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces when you are driving, it offers the last one.*

**Note:** *If the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 35 km/h (22 mph), the system shows a message to instruct you to reduce the vehicle speed.*

## Automatically Steering into a Parallel Parking Space

When you shift into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

**Note:** *If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 9 km/h (6 mph), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.*

**Note:** *If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.*



When you believe your vehicle is correctly parked, or a solid tone sounds and an information message appears, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When the Active Park Assist maneuver is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

**Note:** *You are responsible for checking how your vehicle is parked and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.*

# Parking Aids

## Deactivating Active Park Assist

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above 35 km/h (22 mph) for 30 seconds when searching for a parking space.
- Driving above 50 km/h (31 mph).
- Driving above 9 km/h (6 mph) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates or fails.
- The anti-lock brake system activates or fails.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears and a tone sounds. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Perpendicular Parking

The system detects available perpendicular parking spaces and steers your vehicle into the space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you into a perpendicular parking space.



Press the button twice to search for a parking space.

When the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph), the system scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. A message and a graphic appear in the information display to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

**Note:** *The system scans both sides of your vehicle and offers parking spaces one side at a time if you do not use the direction indicator.*

**Note:** *The system defaults to the passenger side if you do not use the direction indicator.*



Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) and perpendicular to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** *If you drive your vehicle less than 0.5 m (2 ft) or greater than 1.5 m (5 ft) away from other parked vehicles, the system may not be able to detect an available parking space.*

When the system detects a suitable space, a message displays and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the onscreen instructions. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may have to move forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

**Note:** *You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.*

**Note:** *The system always offers the last detected parking space. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces when you are driving, it offers the last one.*

# Parking Aids

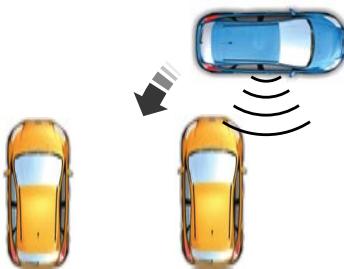
**Note:** If the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 30 km/h (19 mph), the system shows a message to instruct you to reduce the vehicle speed.

## Automatically Steering into a Perpendicular Parking Space

When you shift into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

**Note:** If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 9 km/h (6 mph), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.

**Note:** If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.



E186191

When you believe your vehicle is correctly parked, or a solid tone sounds and an information message appears, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When the active park assist maneuver is complete, a tone sounds and a message appears.

**Note:** You are responsible for checking how your vehicle is parked and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

## Deactivating Active Park Assist

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above 30 km/h (19 mph) for 30 seconds when searching for a parking space.
- Driving above 50 km/h (31 mph).
- Driving above 9 km/h (6 mph) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates or fails.
- The anti-lock brake system activates or fails.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears and a tone sounds. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Parallel Park Out Assist

The system steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you out of a parallel parking space.

**Note:** This system is not intended to assist when exiting a perpendicular parking space.

# Parking Aids



Press the button once when your vehicle is stationary in a parallel parking space.

**Note:** If you did not use active park assist to parallel park your vehicle, pressing the button once selects parallel park. You must use the information display to select park out assist.

The system displays a message instructing you to switch a direction indicator on. Use the direction indicator to select which side of your vehicle you want to exit the parking space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

**Note:** If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.



After the system directs your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle. Generally, hand-over is when your vehicle is still inside the parking space.

**Note:** Parallel Park Out Assist may not be available when the clearance to the front or the rear of your vehicle is too small.

**Note:** If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 9 km/h (6 mph), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.

**Note:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle and making sure the path is clear prior to pulling into traffic.

## Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not search for a parking space.	You may have switched the traction control off. The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
The system does not offer a parking space.	The sensors may be blocked. For example, snow, ice or dirt buildup. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions. There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park. There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space. The parking space is more than 1.5 m (5 ft) or less than 0.5 m (2 ft) away.

# Parking Aids

Symptom	Possible Cause
	<p>The vehicle speed is greater than 35 km/h (22 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h (19 mph) for perpendicular parking.</p>
	<p>You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.</p> <p>The system does not correctly position your vehicle in a parking space.</p> <p>Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the current transmission position. For example, rolling forward when in reverse (R).</p> <p>An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.</p> <p>Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be correctly parked.</p> <p>Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.</p> <p>The tires may not be correctly installed or maintained. For example, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.</p> <p>A repair or alteration changes the detection capabilities.</p> <p>A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.</p> <p>The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.</p> <p>The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash.</p>

## REAR VIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

# Parking Aids

**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



The camera is on the rear cargo door.

## Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

The system uses three types of guidelines to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

**Note:** If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the rear cargo door is open, no rear view camera features will display.

**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

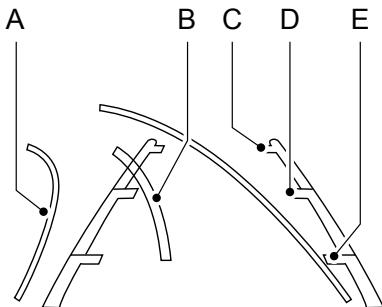
## Camera System Settings

You can access the rear view camera system settings through the display screen. See **General Information** (page 103).

## Camera Guidelines

**Note:** Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

# Parking Aids



E142436

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

## Obstacle Distance Indicator (if Equipped)



The system will provide an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones. The zones will highlight green, yellow and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

## Manual Zoom



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

**Note:** *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

## Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P) (automatic transmission).
- You apply the parking brake (manual transmission).

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

## USING CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button.

### Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode. The system also turns off when you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** The set speed erases when you switch the system off.

### Setting the Cruise Speed

Drive to the required speed.

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

**SET-**

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** The set speed appears in the information display.

### Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

**SET-**

Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

### Canceling the Set Speed

**CAN**

Press the button, or press the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

**Note:** The set speed is stored.

**Note:** The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.

### Resuming the Set Speed

**RES**

Press to resume the set speed.

# Cruise Control

## Cruise Control Indicator



The indicator appears when you switch the system on.

## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITHOUT: STOP AND GO



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).



**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.



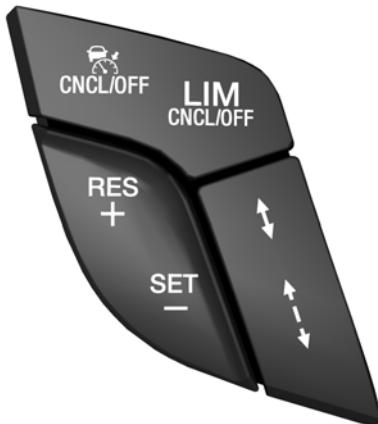
**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.



**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select four gap settings.

The system uses a radar sensor that projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.



E214117

The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

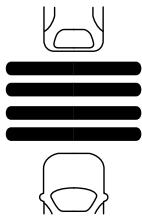
## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

Press **CAN/OFF**.



The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

# Cruise Control

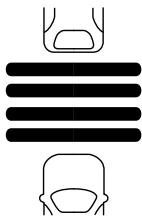


E164805

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

1. Drive to your preferred speed.
2. Press **SET-**.
3. A green indicator light, the current gap setting and your set speed appear in the information display.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



E164805

5. A vehicle image illuminates if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

## Following a Vehicle



**WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

**Note:** The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the information display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake.

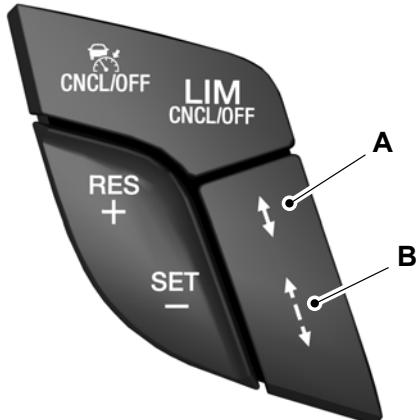
## Setting the Gap Distance

**Note:** The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance automatically adjusts with your vehicle speed.

# Cruise Control

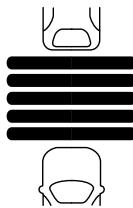
**Note:** It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.



E214118

- A Gap decrease.
- B Gap increase.



E82312

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image.

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Distance Gap	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closes.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Overriding the Set Speed



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.



When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the vehicle image does not appear in the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## Changing the Set Speed

- Press **RES+** or **SET-** to change the set speed in small increments.
- Press and hold **RES+** or **SET-** to change the set speed in large increments. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

## Cancelling the Set Speed

Press **CAN/OFF** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

## Resuming the Set Speed

**Note:** Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

Press **RES+**. Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

## Automatic Cancellation

**Note:** If the engine speed drops too low, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the information display. Automatic braking releases.

The system does not operate below 20 km/h (12 mph).

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

## Hilly Condition Usage

**Note:** An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again when the brakes have cooled.

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

**Note:** You erase the set speed and gap setting when you switch the system off.

Press **CAN/OFF** when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

## Detection Issues



**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

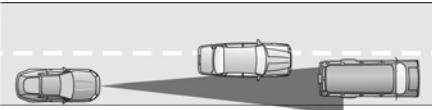


**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

# Cruise Control

**A**



In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections.

**B**



## System Not Available

The system may not turn on if there is:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

### Blocked Sensor



E145632

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is in the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

Detection issues can occur:

- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

# Cruise Control

## Possible Causes and Actions for This Message Displaying:

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears or clears after a you restart your vehicle.

## Switching to Normal Cruise Control



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.



The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: STOP AND GO



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

# Cruise Control

**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select four gap settings.

The system uses a radar sensor which projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.



E262918

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 227).

## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

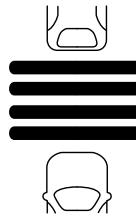
**ON**

For vehicles without Speed Limiter, press and release the button.



For vehicles with Speed Limiter, press and release the button.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E164805

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

Drive to your preferred speed.

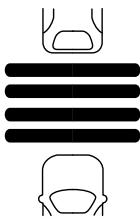
**SET-**

Press and release the button.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

# Cruise Control

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E164805

A vehicle graphic appears in the information display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.

**RES+** Press while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

The set speed adjusts to 30 km/h (20 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

## Following a Vehicle



**WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the information display.

**Note:** The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

**Note:** When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the information display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

# Cruise Control

## Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

**RES+** If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press to follow the vehicle ahead. Or press the accelerator pedal.

## Setting the Gap Distance

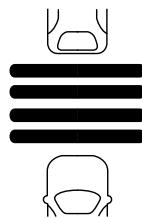
You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.



Press and release to decrease the gap distance.



Press and release to increase the gap distance.



E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image.

**Note:** The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

**Note:** It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Distance Gap	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Overriding the Set Speed



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal normally to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the vehicle graphic disappears from the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## Changing the Set Speed



Press and release to increase the set speed in small increments.

## SET-

Press and release to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold either button to change the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach your preferred speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

## Cancelling the Set Speed

### CNCL

Press and release the button or tap the brake pedal.

**Note:** The system remembers the set speed.

## Resuming the Set Speed

### RES+

Press and release the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

**Note:** Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

## Automatic Cancellation

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

## Park Brake Application

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the door after you stop the vehicle.
- You hold the vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

## Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

**Note:** An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.

## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

### OFF

For vehicles without Speed Limiter, press and release the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

### ON

For vehicles with Speed Limiter, press and release the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

# Cruise Control

## Detection Issues



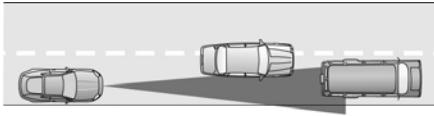
**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



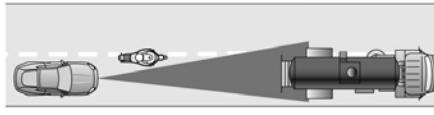
**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not display if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

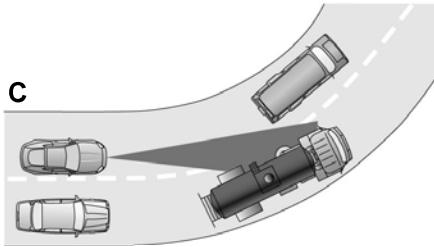
**A**



**B**



**C**



Detection issues can occur:

- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

# Cruise Control

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

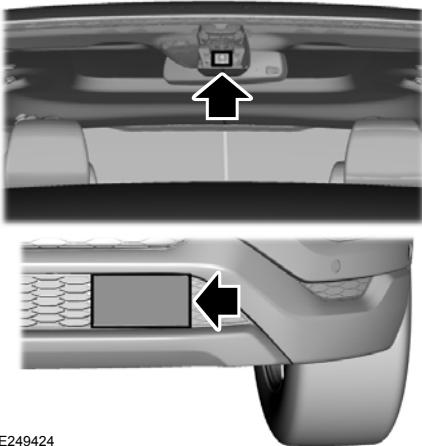
- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

## System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

## Blocked Sensor



E249424

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is in the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

# Cruise Control

## Possible Causes and Actions for This Message Displaying:

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.	Wait for a short time or switch to normal cruise control.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.

## Switching to Normal Cruise Control

You can change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

## SPEED LIMITER - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed becomes the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

### Using the system

**Note:** The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.

**The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.**



E184571

### Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM CNCL/OFF to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed. Press LIM CNCL/OFF with the limiter in standby mode to turn the system OFF.

### Setting the Speed Limit

- Press SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the LIM symbol in the information display shows as green.
- Press RES+ or SET- to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the button once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to adjust the set speed in large increments.
- Press LIM CNCL/OFF to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The LIM symbol in the information display shows as grey.
- Press RES+ to resume the limiter. The LIM symbol in the information display shows as green.

### Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

### System Warnings

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

# Driving Aids

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

## Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter

(If Equipped)



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** When driving between countries that use different units of measure (miles per hour or kilometers per hour), there may be a delay before the system changes between speed limit units. During this time, the display screen for the speed limiter may differ from the actual posted speed limit. For best performance, make sure that the navigation SD card is in the navigation media port.

The system allows you to automatically limit your vehicle speed to the speed limit that is detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system.

You can change the speed limiter mode between manual and intelligent in the information display. See **General Information** (page 103).

You can select a permanent set speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display. See **General Information** (page 103).

## Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM CNCL/OFF to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed or show the detected speed limit as the set speed. The Intelligent Speed Limiter does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode. The Auto LIM symbol and set speed indication show as grey in standby mode. Press LIM CNCL/OFF with the limiter in standby mode to switch the system off.

## Setting the Speed Limit

- Press Res+ with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the detected speed limit. Speed limitation activates and the Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- Press SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- Press RES+ or SET- to gradually change the current set speed to your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the button once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to adjust the set speed in large increments.
- Press LIM CNCL/OFF to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The Auto LIM symbol shows as grey.

# Driving Aids

- Press RES+ to resume the limiter. The Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- The limit speed adapts to the speed limit detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system. The Intelligent Speed Limiter does not react to speed limits shown with a supplementary sign by the Traffic Sign Recognition system. If there is no speed limit information available, the limiter switches to standby mode.

## Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator pedal to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

## System Warnings

If the set speed is automatically set to a lower value than your current vehicle speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds if you are continuously exceeding the set speed.

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

If the Traffic Sign Recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, an audible warning tone sounds and the system switches to standby mode.

## SPEED LIMITER - VEHICLES WITH: CRUISE CONTROL

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed becomes the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

### Using the Speed Limiter

**Note:** The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.

**The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.**



E191232

## Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed. Press LIM again to switch the system off.

## Setting the Speed Limiter

- Press SET+ or SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. The LIM symbol in the information display shows as green.
- Press SET+ or SET- to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the button once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to adjust the set speed in large increments.
- Press CNCL to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The LIM symbol in the information display shows as grey.
- Press RES to resume the limiter. The LIM symbol shows as green.

## Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator pedal to temporarily switch the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

## System Warnings

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

## Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter

(If Equipped)



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** When driving between countries that use different units of measure (miles per hour or kilometers per hour), there may be a delay before the system changes between speed limit units. During this time, the display screen for the speed limiter may differ from the actual posted speed limit. For best performance, make sure that the navigation SD card is in the navigation media port.

The system allows you to automatically limit your vehicle speed to the speed limit that is detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system.

You can change the speed limiter mode between manual and intelligent in the information display. See **General Information** (page 103).

You can select a permanent set speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display. See **General Information** (page 103).

# Driving Aids

## Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed or show the detected speed limit as the set speed. The Intelligent Speed Limiter does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode. The Auto LIM symbol and set speed indication show as grey in standby mode. Press LIM with the limiter in standby mode to switch the system off.

## Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator pedal to temporarily switch the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

## Setting the Speed Limiter

- Press RES with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the detected speed limit. Speed limitation activates and the Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- Press SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- Press SET+ or SET- to gradually change the current set speed to your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the button once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to adjust the set speed in large increments.
- Press CNCL to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The Auto LIM symbol shows as grey.

- Press RES to resume the limiter. The Auto LIM symbol shows as green.
- The limit speed adapts to the speed limit detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system. The Intelligent Speed Limiter does not react to speed limits shown with a supplementary sign by the Traffic Sign Recognition system. If there is no speed limit information available, the limiter switches to standby mode.

## System Warnings

If the set speed is automatically set to a lower value than your current vehicle speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds if you are continuously exceeding the set speed.

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

If the Traffic Sign Recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, an audible warning tone sounds and the system switches to standby mode.

## DRIVER ALERT

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



**WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

**Note:** The system assists you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.

**Note:** The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system monitors your driving behavior.

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

## Using Driver Alert

### Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 103).

**Note:** The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

### System Warnings

**Note:** The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 115).

Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

### Resetting the System

You can reset the system by:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping your vehicle and then opening and closing the driver door.

# Driving Aids

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



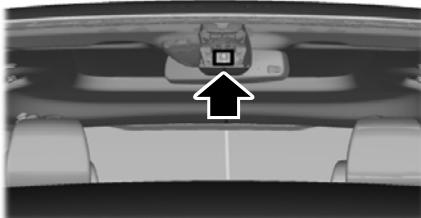
**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

**Note:** The system works above 64 km/h (40 mph).

**Note:** The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.

**Note:** When aid mode is on and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.

**Note:** The system may not function if the camera is blocked, or if the windshield is damaged or dirty.



E249505

When you switch the system on and it detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur, the system notifies or assists you to stay in your lane through the steering system and information display. Depending on the feature operation mode you select, the system provides a warning by vibrating the steering wheel or a steering assistance by gently counter steering your vehicle back into the lane.

# Driving Aids

## Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** The system on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey™ is detected. If the system detects a MyKey™, it defaults to on and the mode is set to alert.



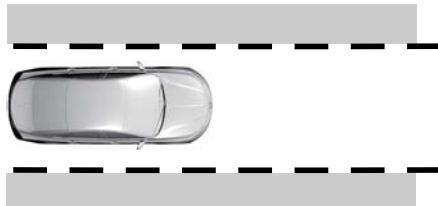
E132099

Press the button on the direction indicator stalk to switch the system on or off.

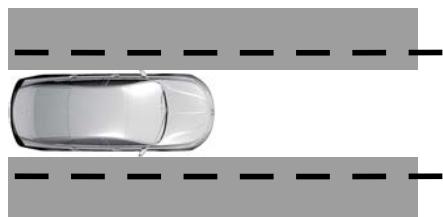
### System Settings

The system has optional setting menus available. The system stores the last-known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you switch on the system.

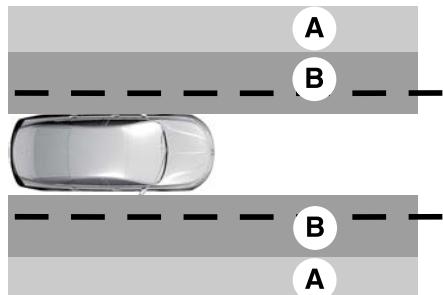
**Mode:** This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



Aid only – Provides steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



A Alert

B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides steering assistance toward the lane center.

If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane after the lane keeping aid corrects the vehicle, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

**Note:** The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.

**Intensity:** This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. **This setting does not affect the aid mode.**

# Driving Aids

- Low
- Normal
- High

## System Display



E151660

If you switch the system on in alert mode, an overhead graphic of a vehicle with lane markings appears in the information display.

If you switch the system on in aid or alert and aid mode, a separate white icon also appears, or in some vehicles, arrows display with the lane markings.

When you switch the system off, the lane marking graphics do not display.

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side. This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The direction indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.
- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field of view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental, traffic or vehicle conditions. For example, significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog, following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane, poor headlamp illumination.

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side.

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the turn signal indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.
- Driving too close to the lane marking.

## Driving Aids

---

### Troubleshooting

<b>Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?</b>
Your vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature.
The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
Your vehicle stays too close to the lane markings.
Driving at high speeds in curves.
The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
Ambiguous lane markings, for example in construction zones.
Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
Sudden offset in lane markings.
ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa.
There is standing water on the road.
Faint lane markings, for example partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
The camera has not been calibrated after a windshield replacement.
Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads.

# Driving Aids

## Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?

High cross winds are present.

There is a large road crown.

Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.

Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.

The tires have been changed, or the suspension has been modified.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM



**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.

**Note:** *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

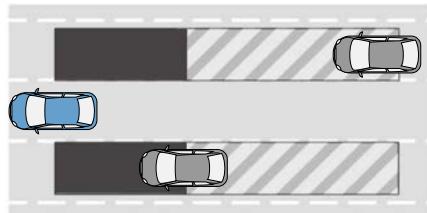
### Using the Blind Spot Information System

#### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*



# Driving Aids

## Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** The system does not operate in reverse (R).

## System Lights and Messages



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

**Note:** The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

## Blocked Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 115). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

## System Errors

If the system detects a fault, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 115).

## Switching the System On and Off

You can switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 103). When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

# Driving Aids

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT



**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



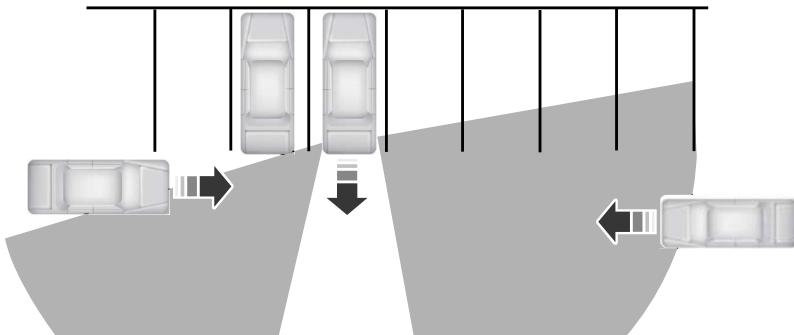
**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides when you shift into reverse (R).

### Using the Cross Traffic Alert System

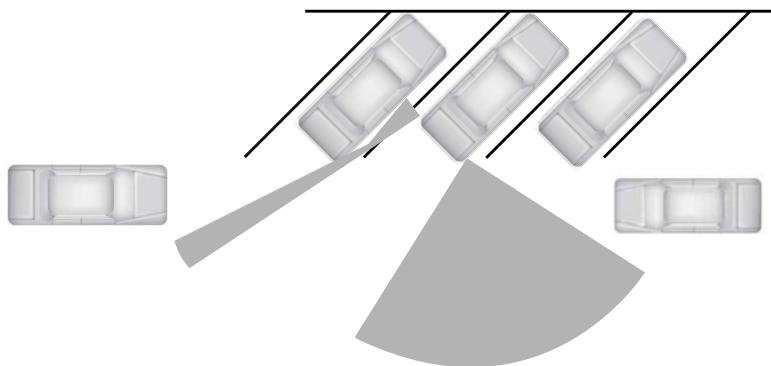
The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach with a speed up to 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.

# Driving Aids



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

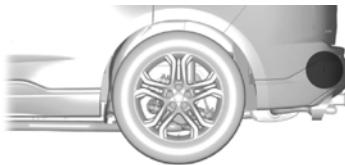
## System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts



When the system detects a vehicle, an indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display.

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing in the distance.*

## Blocked Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R). See **Information Messages** (page 115).

## System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacent parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

## System Errors

If the system detects a fault a message displays. See **General Information** (page 103).

## Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 103). When you switch system off, a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 115).

**Note:** The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on and you shift into reverse (R). If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

**Note:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

**Note:** Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not correctly function.

**Note:** Always replace headlamp bulbs with those specifically designed for your vehicle. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

**Note:** The system may not detect all traffic signs and may incorrectly read signs.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system is designed to detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.

# Driving Aids

**Note:** Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

The sensor is behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors road signs to inform you of the current maximum speed limit and overtaking regulations.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

## Using Traffic Sign Recognition

### Setting the System Speed Warning

The system has a number of speed warning levels that you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 103).

### System Display



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in four stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

3. After a predetermined distance they are greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they are deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

### Switching Speed Warning On and Off

You can switch the speed warning on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 103).

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

### ECO

### Principle of Operation

The system is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently. See **Driving Economically** (page 283).

**Note:** The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. See **Fuel Consumption** (page 181).

**Note:** The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.

### Eco Mode System Display

You can view the instantaneous efficiency level or the trip summary in the information display.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.

2. Select **Display settings**.
3. Select **Eco coach**.
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## Instantaneous Efficiency Level

The display circle illuminates as the instantaneous efficiency level increases. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

## Trip Summary

You can check the trip summary status for acceleration, deceleration and speed during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip in the information display.

## Checking Trip Summary Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.
3. Select **Eco behaviour**.
4. Select the screen on your main screen. See **General Information** (page 103).

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.



**WARNING:** The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.



**WARNING:** In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

The pre-collision assist system is active when your vehicle reaches a speed greater than approximately 5 km/h (3 mph). Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

**Note:** The system is not designed to detect animals.

## Driving Aids

**Note:** The system is not designed to detect vehicles or cyclists that are traveling in a different direction.



E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle or cyclist traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

Level of Functionality	Description
Alert	When activated, a warning lamp flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Active braking - vehicles without adaptive cruise control	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash. The system is active at speeds up to 130 km/h (80 mph).
Active braking - vehicles with adaptive cruise control	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

**To switch active braking on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist	Press the menu button.
Pre-collision Assist	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Active braking	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

### Distance Alert (If Equipped)

A warning lamp illuminates if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

**Note:** The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

# Driving Aids

## Distance Alert Sensitivity Settings

**To adjust the distance alert sensitivity settings, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist	Press the menu button.
Pre-collision Assist	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Alert sensitivity	Press the <b>OK</b> button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the <b>OK</b> button.

## Distance Indication (If Equipped)

A graphical indication displays the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

**Note:** *The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.*

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft).	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft).	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m (55.8 ft).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

## Switching Distance Indication On or Off

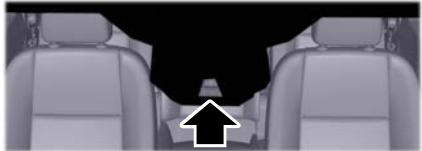
**To switch distance indication on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist	Press the menu button.
Pre-collision Assist	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Distance indication	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

# Driving Aids

## Pre-Collision Assist System Sensors

### Vehicles without Adaptive Cruise Control



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

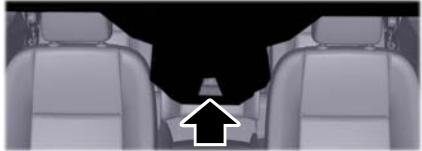
**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message may appear in the information display.

### Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control



E243054

 It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

It illuminates when the system is not available.

# Driving Aids

## Pre-Collision Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message may display.**

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

# Driving Aids

---

## DRIVE CONTROL

### Driver Select Suspension

Driver select suspension delivers a unique driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems continuously monitor your driving inputs and the road conditions to optimize ride comfort, steering and handling.

Driver select suspension consists of the following systems:

- Continuously controlled damping dynamically adjusts the shock absorbers stiffness in real time to match the road surface and driver inputs. This system continuously monitors your vehicle's motion (roll, pitch, bounce), suspension position, load, speed, road conditions, and steering to adjust the suspension damping for optimal vehicle control.
- Electronically power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on your vehicle speed and your inputs.
- Adaptive steering optimizes your vehicle's steering response based on your steering wheel input, changes in vehicle speed, or other conditions.

You can configure which of the modes are active from the main menu on the information display. See **General Information** (page 103).

Modes:

- Comfort – Provides a more relaxed driving experience, maximizing comfort. Your steering effort decreases and the suspension movement is more fluid. Comfort mode is ideal when you desire enhanced traveling comfort.
- Normal – Delivers a balanced combination of comfortable, controlled ride and confident handling. This mode provides an engaging drive experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from your vehicle.
- Sport – Provides a sportier driving experience. The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control. The engine responds more directly to your inputs. Sport mode is ideal for use during more spirited driving.

**Note:** *The Drive Control has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. Certain types of system errors will gray out the mode selections within the information display, preventing you from changing states when the gear position is changed. Other types of errors will produce a temporary message that states a malfunction. If either condition persists for multiple key cycles, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

### Adaptive Steering

The adaptive steering system provides a mode selection that changes how much your vehicle responds to your steering wheel input.

You can configure which of the modes are active from the main menu on the information display. See **General Information** (page 103).

## Driving Aids

---

Modes:

- Normal – Provides an enhanced fun-to-drive feel used for everyday driving.
- Sport – Provides a more responsive and engaging driving experience.

# Local Hazard Information

## WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

## CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist**.
2. Select **Local hazard info**.

## LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

**Note:** Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 370).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.
8. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

# Load Carrying

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

**Note:** When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

### Wagon



E86912

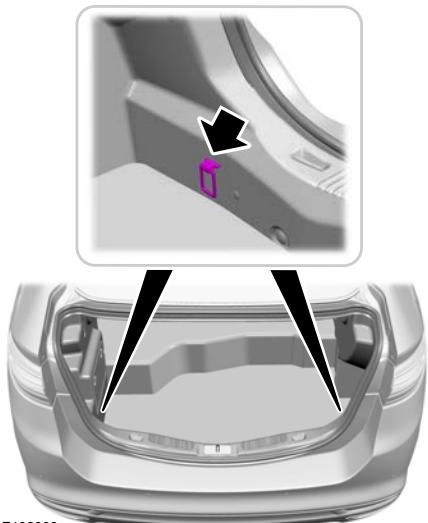
### 4-door and 5-door



E86913

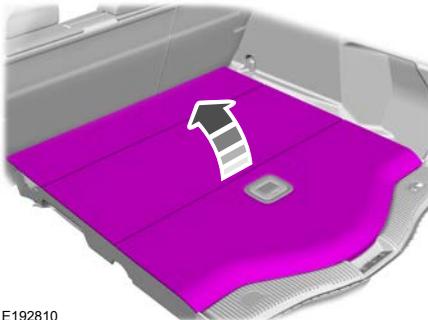
# Load Carrying

## Hybrid



E192808

## REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE



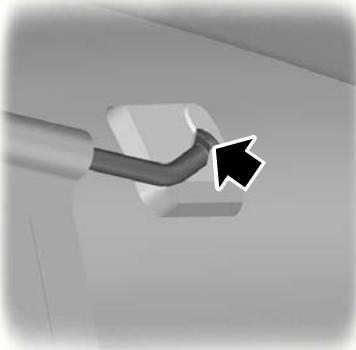
E192810

Raise the loadspace floor to gain access to the storage compartment.

## CARGO NETS - WAGON

### Luggage retention net

#### Installing the net



E87052

1. Push the ends of the upper bar toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the headliner. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.



E87053

# Load Carrying

2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 265).



E87054

3. Tighten the belts.

## Removing the net



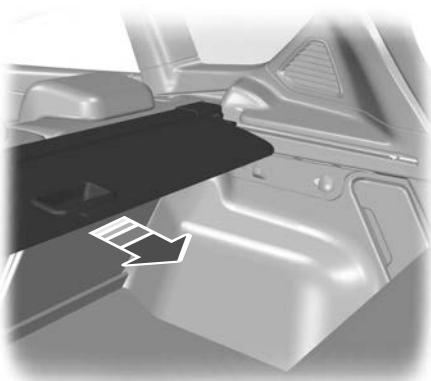
E87135

1. Release the belts.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

## LUGGAGE COVERS

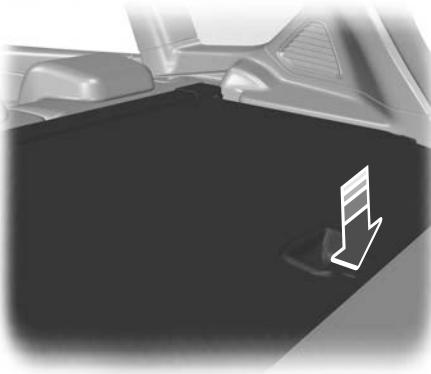


**WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover.



E112571

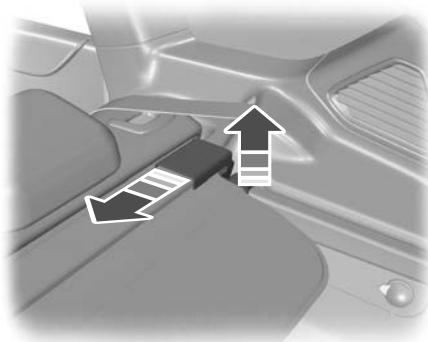
Pull out the cover until it locks.



E112572

# Load Carrying

Release it from the retaining points by pressing below the handle. Roll it slowly back into the case.



E112588

To remove or install the cover, push either end of the case inward.

## **Stowing the luggage cover - Estate without full size spare wheel**



E134798

Stow the luggage cover beneath the luggage compartment floor.

## **ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS**



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, evenly distribute the load, and maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles with higher centers of gravity may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when you drive a heavily loaded vehicle.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum axle load for your vehicle. See Vehicle Identification Plate.



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you install a roof rack.



**WARNING:** Do not place loads directly on the roof panel.



**WARNING:** If you use a roof rack, your vehicle uses more fuel and you may experience different driving characteristics.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load of 75 kg (165 lb) (including the roof rack).

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check to make sure the straps are secure before driving and at each fuel stop.

When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford genuine accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

To reduce fuel consumption, remove cross rails when not in use.

# Load Carrying

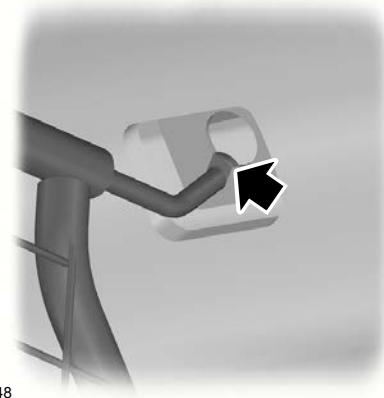
## DOG GUARD - WAGON, EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

**Note:** Leave at least 1 cm (0.4 in) space between the dog guard and the seats in front of it.

**Note:** Passengers should not sit in the row of seats directly behind the installed dog guard.

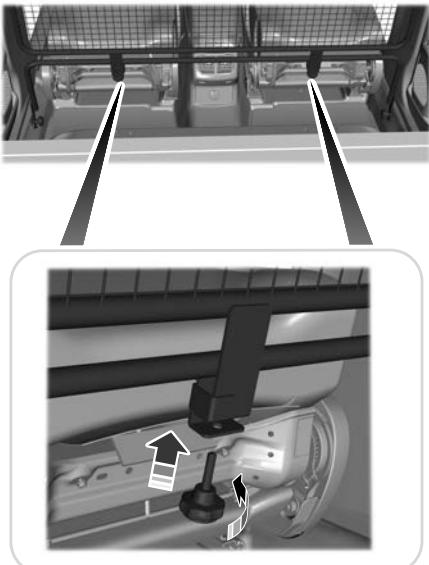
**Note:** Do not overtighten the handwheels that connect the grille to the lower bar. Make sure the lower bar's frame is not bent.

### Installing the Dog Guard Behind the Front Seats



E86848

1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.

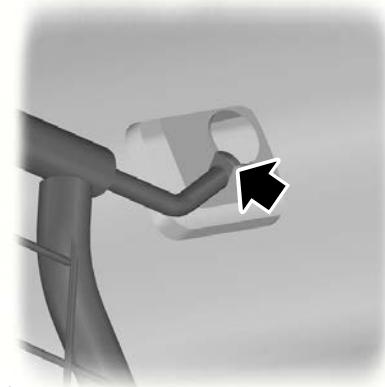


E188614

2. Attach the grille to the lower bar with the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.

## Load Carrying

### Installing the Dog Guard Behind the Rear Seats



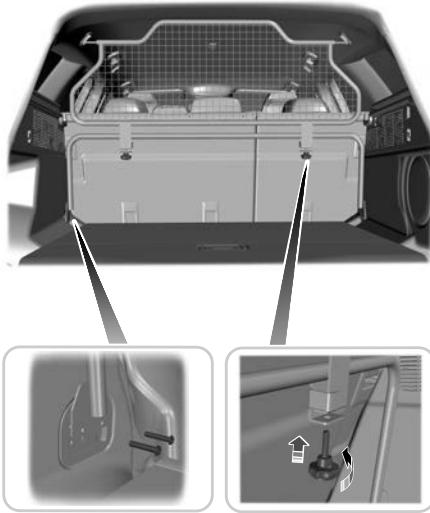
1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.

3. Attach the dog guard to the lower anchor points using the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
4. Tighten the handwheels at the lower anchor points.
5. Tighten the handwheels at the grille-lower bar attachment points.

Remove in the reverse order.

# Load Carrying

## DOG GUARD - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV), WAGON



E188615

2. Remove two screws from each of the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 265).
3. Attach the lower bar to the grille with the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
4. Attach the dog guard lower bar to the luggage anchor points and secure with the new supplied screws.
5. Tighten the handwheels.

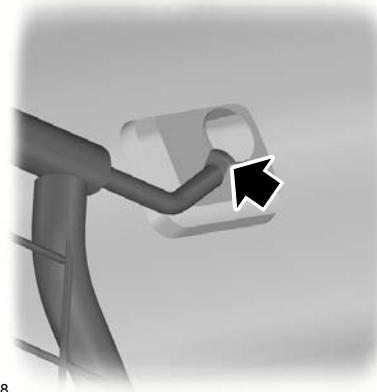
Remove in the reverse order.

**Note:** Leave at least 1 cm (0.4 in) space between the dog guard and the seats in front of it.

**Note:** Passengers should not sit in the row of seats directly behind the installed dog guard.

**Note:** Do not overtighten the handwheels that connect the grille to the lower bar. Make sure the lower bar's frame is not bent.

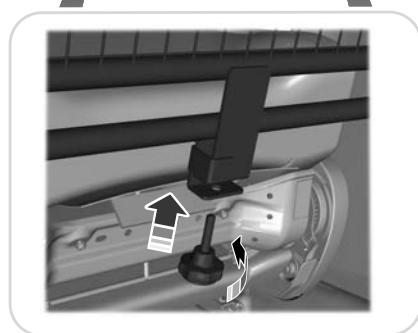
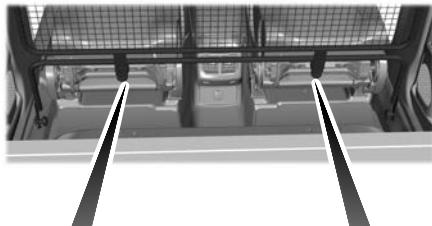
### Installing the Dog Guard Behind the Front Seats



E86848

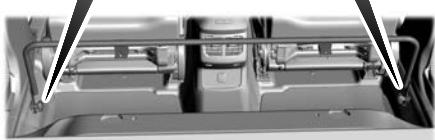
1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.

## Load Carrying



E188614

2. Attach the grille to the lower bar with the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.



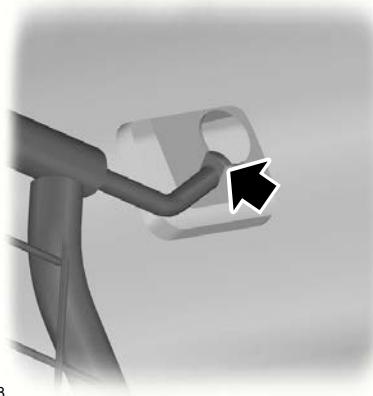
E188613

3. Attach the dog guard to the lower anchor points using the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
4. Tighten the handwheels at the lower anchor points.
5. Tighten the handwheels at the grille-lower bar attachment points.

Remove in the reverse order.

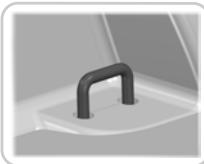
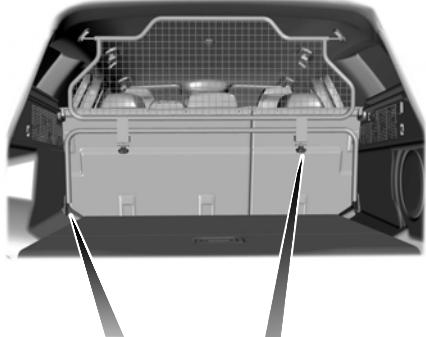
# Load Carrying

## Installing the Dog Guard Behind the Rear Seats



E86848

1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.



E294141

2. Attach the grille to the lower bar with the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
3. Attach the dog guard to the lower anchor points using the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
4. Tighten the handwheels at the lower anchor points.
5. Tighten the handwheels at the grille-lower bar attachment points.

Remove in the reverse order.

## TOWING A TRAILER - 4-DOOR, EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The rear tire pressures must be increased by 0.2 bar (3 psi) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unloaded vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).
- The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 276).
- Use a low gear when descending a steep slope.

**Note:** We recommend that you use a trailer safety cable. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you use a trailer safety cable.

**Note:** The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight may be lower.

The stability of your vehicle-to-trailer combination depends on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the handling characteristics of your vehicle and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behaviour to the load of the trailer.

# Towing

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft).

**Note:** Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.

## TOWING A TRAILER - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV), 4-DOOR



**WARNING:** Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

## TOWING A TRAILER - 5-DOOR/ WAGON



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The rear tire pressures must be increased by 0.2 bar (3 psi) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unloaded vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).
- The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 276).
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

**Note:** *We recommend that you use a trailer safety cable. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you use a trailer safety cable.*

**Note:** *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight may be lower.*

The stability of your vehicle-to-trailer combination depends on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the handling characteristics of your vehicle and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to the trailer load.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft).

**Note:** *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

If the trailer begins to sway the stability control warning lamp flashes in the information display. The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 265).

**Note:** *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

**Note:** *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

**Note:** *In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.*

## TOW BALL - VEHICLES WITH: DETACHABLE TOW BALL



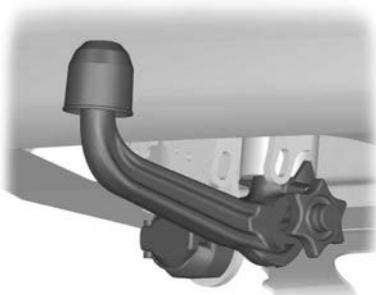
**WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

# Towing



E71328

## Detaching the Tow Ball Arm

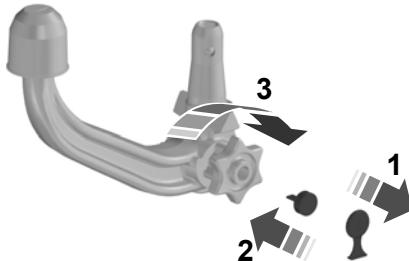


**WARNING:** Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. We recommend that you securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.

Do not use any tools to detach the tow ball arm.

Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.



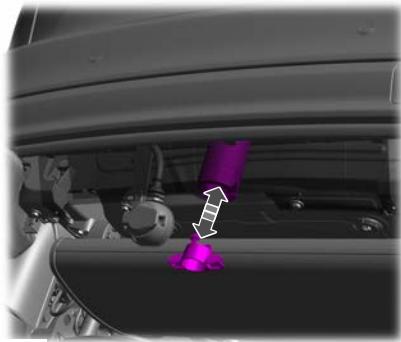
E71329

1. Remove the protective cap.

2. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the handwheel.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel outward and turn it fully clockwise until it clicks.

**Note:** The red mark on the handwheel must align with the white dot on the tow ball arm.

4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90° until it engages in the end position.



E265433

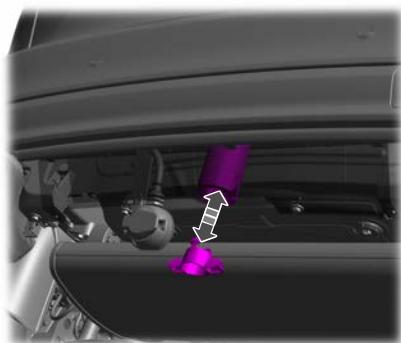
7. Insert the blanking plug.

## Attaching the Tow Ball Arm

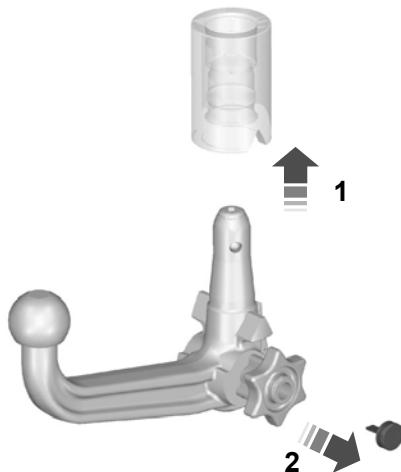
Do not use any tools to attach the tow ball arm.

**Note:** You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked.

# Towing



E265433



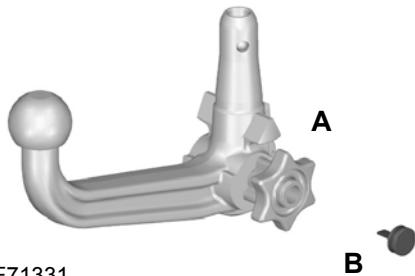
E71330

1. Remove the blanking plug and fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages.

**Note:** Do not place your hand near the handwheel.

**Note:** The green mark on the handwheel must align with the white dot on the tow ball arm.

2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the handwheel.
3. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.
4. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90° until it engages in the end position.



E71331

Check the following:

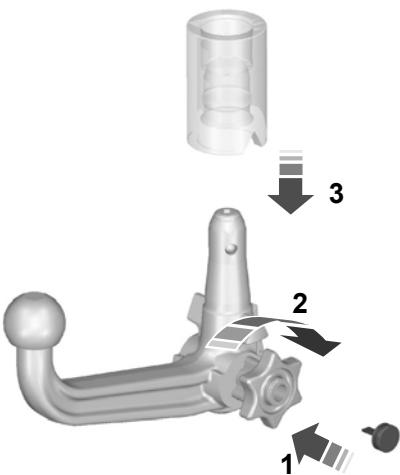
- The green mark on the handwheel is aligned with the white dot on the tow ball arm.
- The handwheel (A) is locked.
- You have removed the key (B).

**Note:** If any of these cannot be met, do not use the tow ball arm. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Quickly Detaching the Tow Ball Arm

Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.

# Towing



E71332

1. Remove the protective cap. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the handwheel.
2. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel outward and turn it clockwise against the stop.
3. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
4. Release the handwheel.
5. Insert the blanking plug.

## Quickly Attaching the Tow Ball Arm

When the tow ball arm is quickly detached, it can be quickly reattached.

1. Remove the blanking plug and fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages.

**Note:** Do not place your hand near the handwheel.

**Note:** The green mark on the handwheel must align with the white dot on the tow ball arm.

2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the handwheel.
3. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.

## Tow Ball Arm Guidelines

- Replacement keys are available. We recommend that you record the key number on the lock cylinder.
- Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces and locking balls with resin-free grease or oil. Lubricate the lock with graphite.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Clean the trailer wiring connection socket regularly and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you detach the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

## TOW BALL - VEHICLES WITH: RETRACTABLE TOW BALL



**WARNING:** An audible warning tone sounds when the tow ball arm is not in the fully stowed position or in proper towing position. If the audible warning tone does not sound when the tow ball arm moves or when the system switches on, do not use the tow bar. See an authorized dealer.



**WARNING:** Do not touch the tow ball arm when it is moving.

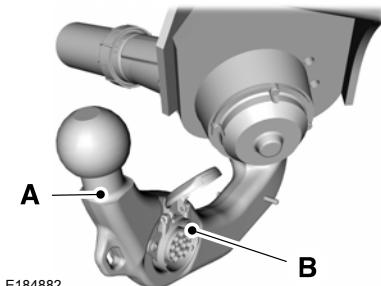
# Towing



**WARNING:** Make sure there are no obstacles preventing the tow ball arm from moving.

**Note:** We recommend keeping the tow ball arm in the stowed position when you are not using it. In addition, consider local regulations and insurance terms.

**Note:** Remove any adapter from the tow bar socket. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the socket. Clean the tow bar socket regularly and make sure no dirt prevents the socket lid from closing properly.



A Tow ball arm.

B 13-pin trailer socket.

## Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm

**Note:** Do not attach any plug to the 13-pin trailer socket.

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle battery has a full charge.

**Note:** The vehicle has to be stationary for the tow ball arm to operate.

**Note:** If something is blocking the tow ball arm during its swivel process, the system tries to reverse. If the tow ball arm stops before it is fully in towing position or stowed position, restart the swivel process by pressing the button twice.

### Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm Out

**Note:** If the tow ball arm does not operate, but you hear an audible double tone (low pitch followed by a high pitch), switch on the ignition for 10 seconds, and then press the brake pedal and try operating the tow ball arm again.

1. Press the button. An audible double tone (low pitch followed by a high pitch) sounds to let you know the system is operating.
2. Press the button again within four seconds to swivel the tow ball arm. A series of audible tones sounds and the LED flashes while the tow ball arm swivels.
3. When the tow ball arm finishes swiveling, the LED stops flashing and an audible double tone (high pitch followed by a low pitch) sounds.

The tow ball arm is ready for use when it finishes swiveling into the towing position.

### Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm In

Before swiveling the tow ball arm in:

- Unhitch the trailer or dismantle load carriers and their attachments.
- Dismantle attachments for tracking stabilization.
- Remove the plug for the trailer power supply and the adapter from the trailer socket. Failure to do so may cause damage to the bumper when the tow ball arm swivels into its stowed position.

# Towing

To start swiveling the tow ball arm in, press the swivel button twice within four seconds.

The tow ball arm swivels into the stowed position automatically.

## Tow Ball Arm Fault Conditions

If the LED on the swivel button is rapidly flashing and an audible tone sequence (high pitch) sounds, repeat the swivel process. If this does not resolve the problem, see an authorized dealer.

A message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 115).

## Driving with a Trailer



**WARNING:** In the event of a vehicle breakdown, disconnect the trailer before towing the vehicle.



**WARNING:** If any of the conditions below cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician. Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked.

Check that:

- There is a last audible low pitch tone when the locking procedure finishes.
- The tow ball arm properly locks. Make sure it does not move when jerked.

## Maintenance

**Note:** The towing hitch and control unit are maintenance-free. Do not grease or oil these components.

**Note:** Do not attempt to service the towing hitch. Only the manufacturer should carry out repairs or dismantle the hitch.

**Note:** When cleaning the vehicle with a steam jet, do not direct the high-pressure jet directly onto the swivel joint of the tow ball arm and socket. After cleaning the vehicle, unplug the connector or open the trailer socket to make sure no water entered. If water is present, dry the socket.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV), 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



**WARNING:** Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.



**WARNING:** When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 292).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not exceed 50 km/h (31 mph). See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 281).

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately  $-25^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-13^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).

## PRECONDITIONING YOUR VEHICLE FOR COLD WEATHER DRIVING

- Fully charge your vehicle before heading out into cold weather. This helps maximize your driving range.
- Plug in your vehicle to maintain the best battery operating temperature before driving.
- When your vehicle is plugged in it uses energy from your charging source to heat the cabin and ensure maximum battery charge level.
- To maximize battery charge level, use heated seats and a lower climate control temperature setting.

**Note:** You can precondition your vehicle prior to your departure using the FordPass app.

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

### Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

## DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

## Driving Hints

### DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

**Note:** Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

### FLOOR MATS



**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

## Driving Hints

---



To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

# Roadside Emergencies

## HAZARD FLASHERS



The hazard flasher switch is on the instrument panel.

Use the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

### Switching the Hazard Flashers On or Off



Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on.

Press the button again to switch the hazard flashers off.

**Note:** All direction indicators flash.

**Note:** Prolonged use of the hazard flashers could cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, if you heavily brake, the hazard flashers could turn on.

### Hazard Flasher Indicator



Flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

## WARNING TRIANGLE

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You may cause transmission damage.

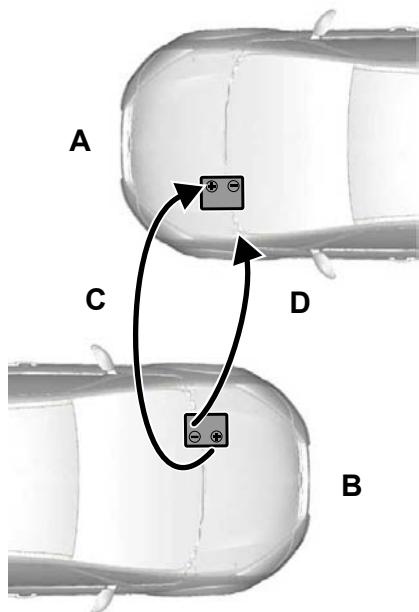
**Note:** Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.

### Preparing Your Vehicle

1. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
2. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

# Roadside Emergencies

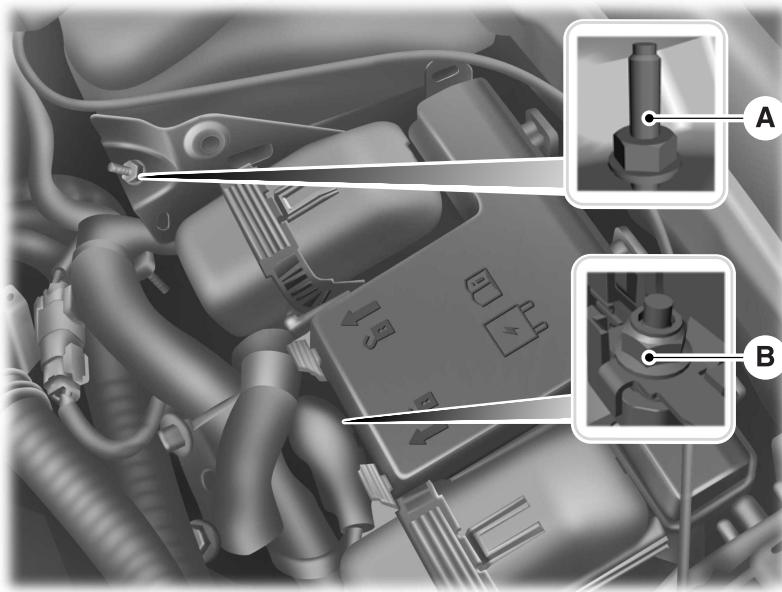
## To Connect the Booster Cables



- A Vehicle with low charge battery.
- B Booster battery vehicle.
- C Positive connection cable.
- D Negative connection cable.

Your vehicle has two battery connections that are accessible from under the hood, even though the actual battery is located in the trunk. Your vehicle can be jumped the same way conventional vehicles can be using these connections. The illustration below shows the two connections used for jump-starting your vehicle.

# Roadside Emergencies



E175005

- A Ground point (-).
- B Positive connection (+).

**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

1. Remove the red cap from the positive connection (B) on your vehicle before connecting the cables.
2. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C). Battery positions may vary.

3. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground point of vehicle A (cable D).

## To Start Your Vehicle

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the disabled vehicle. Check the instrument cluster for the Ready to Drive light as the gasoline engine may not start, but the electric motor may be running.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

# Roadside Emergencies

**Note:** Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

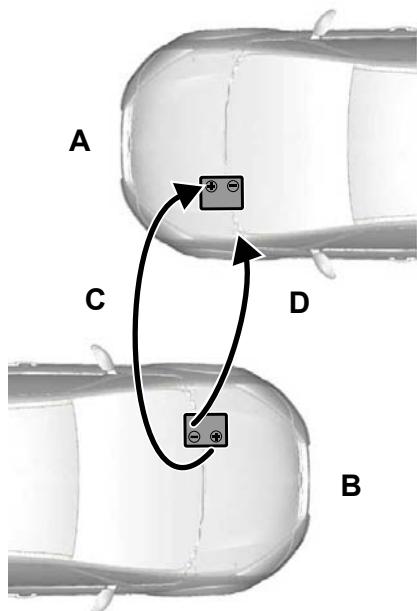
**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

**WARNING:** Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

### To Connect the Booster Cables



- A Flat battery vehicle.
- B Booster battery vehicle.
- C Positive connection cable.
- D Negative connection cable.

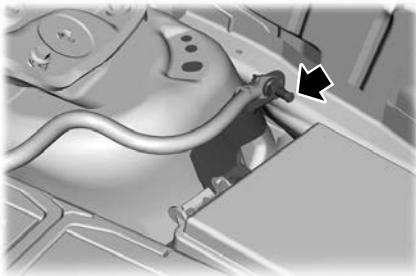
**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

1. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.

# Roadside Emergencies

2. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.



E152134

3. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

## COLLISION, DAMAGE OR FIRE EVENT

### Guidance for Ford Motor Company Electric and Hybrid-Electric Vehicles Equipped With High Voltage Batteries

#### (Vehicle Owner/Operator/General Public) Electric and Hybrid-Electric Vehicle Considerations

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Always assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires, and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery may result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

## To Start the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

# Roadside Emergencies

---

Vehicle information and general safety practices:

- Know the make and model of your vehicle.
- Review the owner's manual and become familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.
- Do not attempt to repair damaged electric and hybrid-electric vehicles yourself.

Contact an authorized dealer.

## Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If possible:

- Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
- Roll down the windows before switching your vehicle off.
- Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard warning flashers and move your key(s) at least 5 m (15 ft) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Exposed electrical components, wires, and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.

- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

## Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

- Exit the vehicle immediately.
- Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.
- Stay out of the roadway and stay out of the way of any oncoming traffic while awaiting the arrival of emergency responders.

## Post-Incident

- Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m (49 ft) of any structure or vehicle.
- Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
- Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

# Roadside Emergencies

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the direction indicator lamps in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

The lamps turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button (if equipped) on the remote entry transmitter.
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

## TOWING POINTS

Due to local market requirements in some countries, some vehicles may be equipped with a recovery hook.

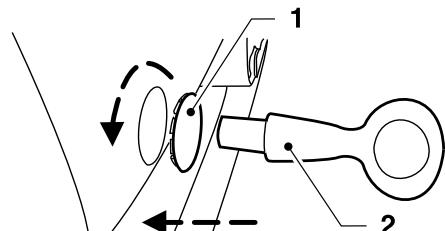
### Recovery Hook Location

If your vehicle is equipped with a screw-in recovery hook, it is with the spare tire kit or the rear under floor storage.

### Installing the Recovery Hook

There is an installation point for the recovery hook located behind the fascia.

**Note:** The screw-in recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the recovery hook is fully tightened.



E146284



E188420

Remove the recovery hook cover by prying it off at the notch with a screwdriver or similar object.

**Note:** Use a soft cloth to cover the prying tool. This helps prevent scratch marks to the vehicle's paint.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

### What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

**Note:** *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

### Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

### Re-Enabling Your Vehicle

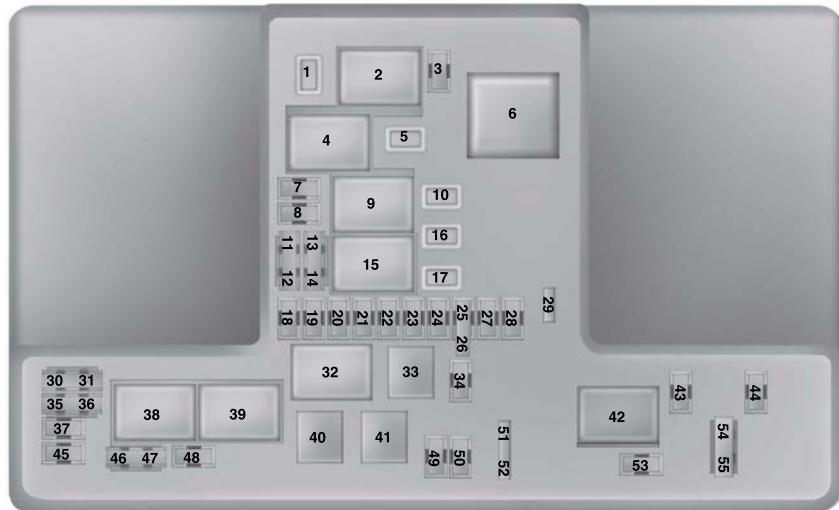
1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## Fuses

### FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

#### Power Distribution Box



E144783

Fuse Or Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
1	25A <sup>1</sup>	RH front wiper motor.
2	—	Starter relay.
3	15A <sup>2</sup>	Autowipers (rain sensor). Rear wipers.
4	—	Blower motor relay.
5	20A <sup>1</sup>	Back of console auxiliary power point.
6	—	Auxiliary heater relay.

## Fuses

---

Fuse Or Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
7	20A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
8	20A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
9	—	Powertrain control module relay.
10	20A <sup>1</sup>	Driver front auxiliary power point.
11	15A <sup>3</sup>	Powertrain control module.
12	15A <sup>3</sup>	Powertrain control module.
13	10A <sup>3</sup>	Powertrain control module.
14	10A <sup>3</sup>	Powertrain control module.
15	—	Run-start relay.
16	20A <sup>1</sup>	Console auxiliary power point.
17	20A <sup>1</sup>	Trunk auxiliary power point (wagon only).
18	10A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
19	10A <sup>2</sup>	Power steering.
20	10A <sup>2</sup>	Headlamps. Headlamp switch.
21	15A <sup>2</sup>	Transmission control module. Transmission oil pump.
22	10A <sup>2</sup>	Air conditioning.
23	15A <sup>2</sup>	Blind spot monitor. Rear view camera. Adaptive Cruise Control. Pre-collision warning indicator. Voltage quality module. Air quality sensor.
24	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).

## Fuses

---

<b>Fuse Or Relay Number</b>	<b>Fuse Amp Rating</b>	<b>Protected Components</b>
25	10A <sup>3</sup>	Anti-lock brake system.
26	10A <sup>3</sup>	Powertrain control module.
27	—	Not used.
28	10A <sup>2</sup>	Rear washer pump.
29	—	Not used.
30	—	Not used.
31	—	Not used.
32	—	Cooling fan relay.
33	—	Air conditioning relay.
34	15A <sup>2</sup>	Electric steering column lock.
35	—	Not used.
36	—	Not used.
37	—	Not used.
38	—	Cooling fan relay.
39	—	Cooling fan relay.
40	—	Not used.
41	—	Horn relay.
42	—	Fuel pump relay.
43	—	Not used.
44	5A <sup>2</sup>	Heated washer nozzle.
45	—	Not used.
46	10A <sup>3</sup>	Alternator.
47	10A <sup>3</sup>	Brake on-off switch.
48	20A <sup>2</sup>	Horn.

## Fuses

Fuse Or Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
49	5A <sup>2</sup>	Mass air flow monitor.
	20A <sup>2</sup>	Fuel heater element-Diesel.
50	10A <sup>2</sup>	Power transfer unit cooling fan.
51	—	Not used.
52	—	Not used.
53	10A <sup>2</sup>	Power seats.
54	5A <sup>3</sup>	Fuel operated heater remote control.
55	5A <sup>3</sup>	Not used (spare).

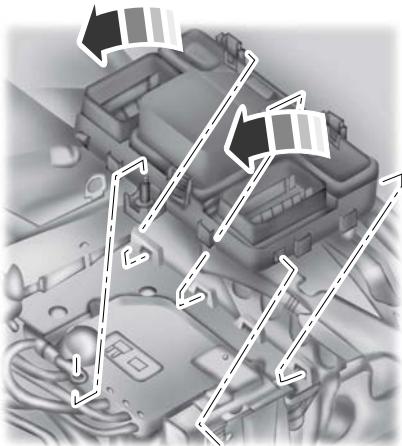
<sup>1</sup>M-type fuse.

<sup>2</sup>Micro fuse.

<sup>3</sup>Dual micro fuse.

### Power Distribution Box - Bottom

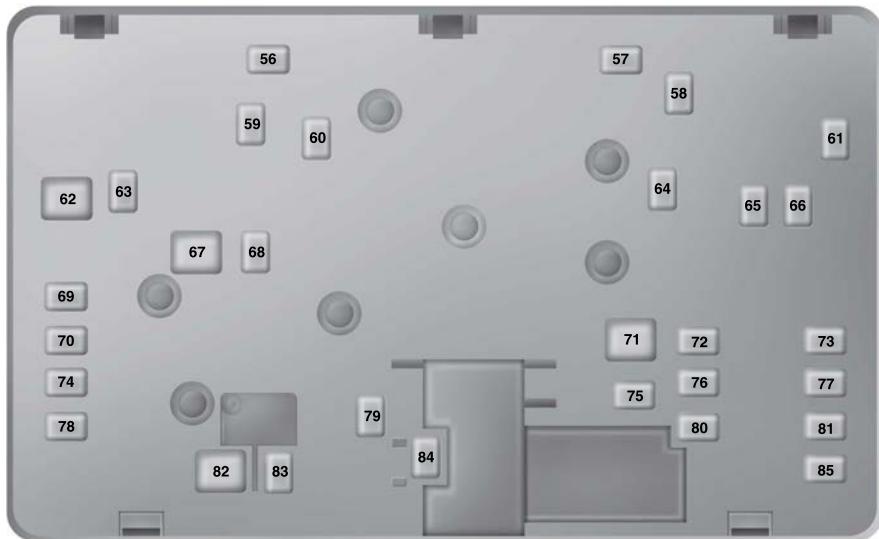
There are fuses located on the bottom of the fuse box. To reach the bottom of the fuse box:



1. Release the two latches, located on both sides of the fuse box.

## Fuses

2. Raise the inboard side of the fuse box from the cradle.
3. Move the fuse box toward the center of the engine compartment.
4. Pivot the outboard side of the fuse box to reach the bottom side.



E144949

<b>Fuse Or Relay Number</b>	<b>Fuse Amp Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
56	—	Not used.
57	20A <sup>1</sup>	Diesel vaporizer.
58	30A <sup>1</sup>	Fuel pump.
59	30A <sup>2</sup>	Cooling fan.
	40A <sup>2</sup>	Cooling fan (DW10F and 2.0L GTDI AU).
60	30A <sup>2</sup>	Cooling fan.

## Fuses

<b>Fuse Or Relay Number</b>	<b>Fuse Amp Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
	40A <sup>2</sup>	Cooling fan (DW10F and 2.0L GTDI AU).
61	40A <sup>1</sup>	Left-hand heated windshield element.
62	50A <sup>2</sup>	Body control module.
63	25A <sup>1</sup>	Cooling fan.
	30A <sup>1</sup>	Cooling fan (DW10F and 2.0L GTDI AU).
64	30A <sup>1</sup>	Auxiliary heater.
65	20A <sup>1</sup>	Front heated seat.
66	40A <sup>1</sup>	Right-hand heated windshield element.
67	50A <sup>2</sup>	Body control module.
68	40A <sup>1</sup>	Heated rear window.
69	30A <sup>1</sup>	Anti-lock brake system.
70	30A <sup>1</sup>	Passenger seat.
71	60A <sup>2</sup>	Auxiliary heater.
72	30A <sup>1</sup>	Moonroof.
73	20A <sup>1</sup>	Rear heated seat.
74	30A <sup>1</sup>	Driver seat module.
75	30A <sup>1</sup>	Auxiliary heater.
76	20A <sup>1</sup>	Transmission oil pump.
77	30A <sup>1</sup>	Climate control seat module.
78	40A <sup>1</sup>	Trailer tow module.
79	40A <sup>1</sup>	Blower motor.

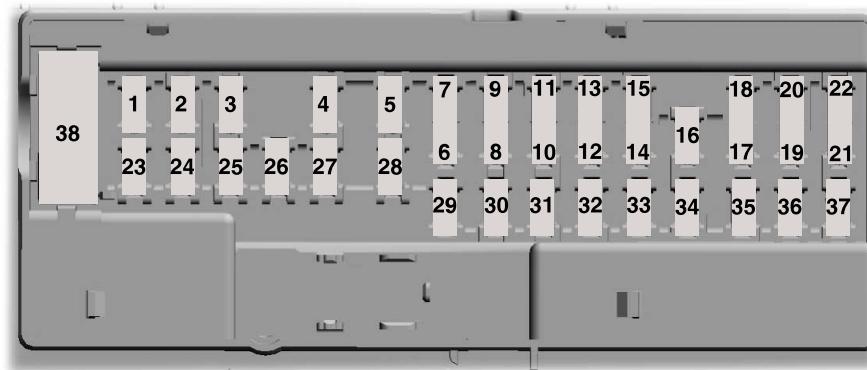
## Fuses

Fuse Or Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Component
80	30A <sup>1</sup>	Power luggage compartment module.
81	40A <sup>1</sup>	220 volt inverter.
82	60A <sup>2</sup>	Anti-lock brake system pump.
83	25A <sup>1</sup>	RH front wiper motor.
84	30A <sup>1</sup>	Starter solenoid.
85	20A <sup>1</sup>	Fuel fire heater.

<sup>1</sup>M-type fuse.

<sup>2</sup>J-type fuse.

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel



## Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
1	—	Not used.
2	7.5A <sup>1</sup>	Memory seat. Driver seat lower back support. Panoramic power sunshade (5-door only).
3	20A <sup>1</sup>	Driver door unlock. Fuel flap unlock.
4	5A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
5	20A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
6	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
7	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
8	10A <sup>2</sup>	Anti-theft alarm horn.
9	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
10	5A <sup>2</sup>	Power liftgate module. Telematics control unit.
11	5A <sup>2</sup>	Combined security module.
12	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Front control integration module (climate and radio control).
13	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Steering wheel column. Instrument cluster. Data link connector.
14	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
15	10A <sup>2</sup>	Data link gateway.
16	15A <sup>1</sup>	Child lock. Luggage compartment-liftglass release.
17	5A <sup>2</sup>	Battery backed-up sounder.
18	5A <sup>2</sup>	Ignition switch.

## Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
		Push button ignition switch.
19	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
20	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Headlamp control module.
21	5A <sup>2</sup>	Passenger compartment thermometer. Humidity sensor.
22	5A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
23	10A <sup>1</sup>	Delayed accessory power.
24	20A <sup>1</sup>	Lock-unlock.
25	30A <sup>1</sup>	Driver door window. Driver door mirror.
26	30A <sup>1</sup>	Front passenger door window. Front passenger door mirror.
27	30A <sup>1</sup>	Moonroof.
28	20A <sup>1</sup>	Audio amplifier.
29	30A <sup>1</sup>	Rear driver side door window.
30	30A <sup>1</sup>	Rear passenger side door window.
31	15A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
32	10A <sup>1</sup>	Global positioning system module. Voice control (SYNC). Information and entertainment display. Radio frequency receiver.
33	20A <sup>1</sup>	Radio.
34	30A <sup>1</sup>	Run/start bus (fuse #19, 20, 21, 22, 35, 36, 37, circuit breaker).
35	5A <sup>1</sup>	Restraints control module.
36	15A <sup>1</sup>	Auto-dimming interior mirror.

## Fuses

---

<b>Fuse or Relay Number</b>	<b>Fuse Amp Rating</b>	<b>Protected Components</b>
		Rear heated seat module. CCD module. Lane keeping system. Auto high beam.
37	15A <sup>1</sup>	All wheel drive module. Heated steering wheel.
38	30A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).

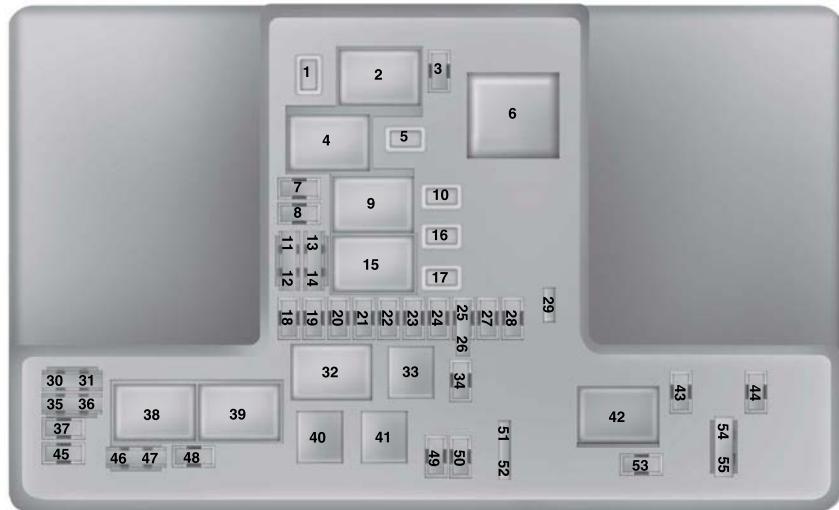
<sup>1</sup>Micro fuse.

<sup>2</sup>Dual micro fuse.

# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Power Distribution Box



E144783

Fuse Or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	25A <sup>1</sup>	RH front wiper motor.
2	—	Not used.
3	15A <sup>2</sup>	Autowipers (rain sensor). Rear wiper.
4	—	Blower motor relay.
5	20A <sup>1</sup>	Back of console auxiliary power point.
6	—	Not used.

## Fuses

---

Fuse Or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
7	20A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
8	20A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
9	—	Powertrain control module relay.
10	20A <sup>1</sup>	Driver front auxiliary power point.
11	15A <sup>3</sup>	Powertrain control module.
12	15A <sup>3</sup>	Powertrain control module.
13	10A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
14	10A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
15	—	Run-start relay.
16	20A <sup>1</sup>	Console auxiliary power point.
17	—	Not used.
18	10A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
19	10A <sup>2</sup>	Power steering.
20	10A <sup>2</sup>	Headlamps. Headlamp switch.
21	15A <sup>2</sup>	Transmission control module. Transmission oil pump. Hybrid electric vehicle inverter.
22	—	Not used.
23	15A <sup>2</sup>	Blind spot monitor. Rear view camera. Adaptive Cruise Control. Pre-collision warning indicator. Voltage quality module. Air quality sensor. Heads up display.
24	—	Not used.

## Fuses

<b>Fuse Or Relay Number</b>	<b>Fuse Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
25	10A <sup>3</sup>	Anti-lock brake system.
26	10A <sup>3</sup>	Powertrain control module.
27	—	Not used.
28	—	Not used.
29	15A <sup>2</sup>	Battery electronic control module.
30	—	Not used.
31	—	Not used.
32	—	Not used.
33	—	Not used.
34	15A <sup>2</sup>	Electric steering column lock.
35	15A <sup>3</sup>	Not used (spare).
36	15A <sup>3</sup>	Not used (spare).
37	—	Not used.
38	—	Vacuum pump relay.
39	—	Vacuum pump relay.
40	—	Fuel pump relay.
41	—	Horn relay.
42	—	Not used.
43	—	Not used.
44	5A <sup>2</sup>	Heated washer nozzle.
45	5A <sup>2</sup>	Vacuum pump monitor.
46	10A <sup>3</sup>	Not used (spare).
47	10A <sup>3</sup>	Brake on-off switch.

# Fuses

Fuse Or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
48	20A <sup>2</sup>	Horn.
49	5A <sup>2</sup>	Mass air flow monitor.
50	—	Not used.
51	15A <sup>3</sup>	Inverter system control.
52	15A <sup>3</sup>	Battery electronic control module.
53	10A <sup>2</sup>	Power seats.
54	10A <sup>3</sup>	Electric cooling pump.
55	10A <sup>3</sup>	Electric air conditioning.

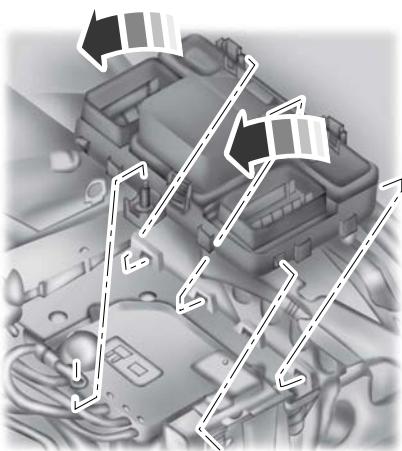
<sup>1</sup>M-type fuse.

<sup>2</sup>Micro fuse.

<sup>3</sup>Dual micro fuse.

## Power Distribution Box - Bottom

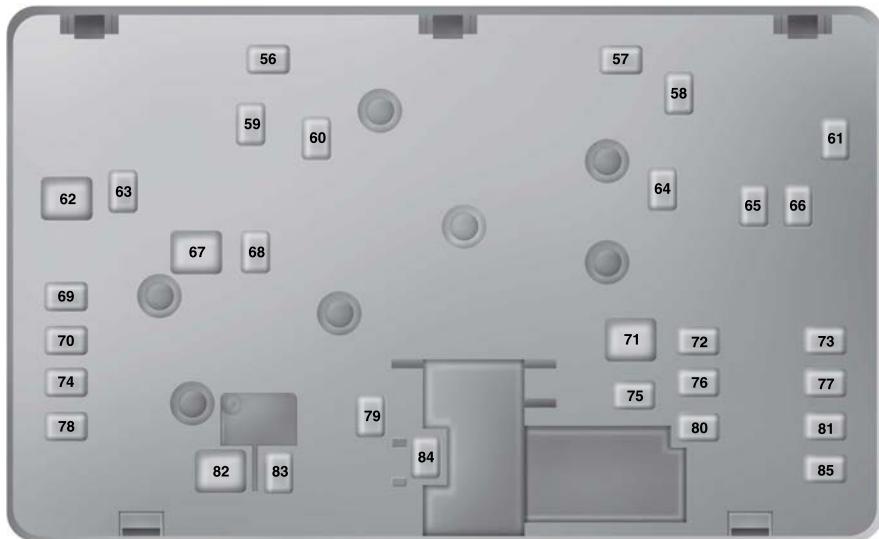
There are fuses on the bottom of the fuse box. To reach the bottom of the fuse box:



1. Release the two latches, located on both sides of the fuse box.

## Fuses

2. Raise the inboard side of the fuse box from the cradle.
3. Move the fuse box toward the center of the engine compartment.
4. Pivot the outboard side of the fuse box to reach the bottom side.



E144949

<b>Fuse Or Relay Number</b>	<b>Fuse Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
56	30A <sup>1</sup>	Fuel pump.
57	20A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
58	—	Not used.
59	40A <sup>1</sup>	Anti-lock brake system.
60	40A <sup>1</sup>	Electronic fan.
61	40A <sup>1</sup>	Left-hand heated windshield element.

## Fuses

<b>Fuse Or Relay Number</b>	<b>Fuse Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
62	50A <sup>2</sup>	Body control module.
63	—	Not used.
64	30A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
65	20A <sup>1</sup>	Front heated seat.
66	40A <sup>1</sup>	Right-hand heated windshield element.
67	50A <sup>2</sup>	Body control module.
68	40A <sup>1</sup>	Heated rear window.
69	—	Not used.
70	30A <sup>1</sup>	Passenger seat.
71	60A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
72	—	Not used.
73	20A <sup>1</sup>	Rear heated seat.
74	30A <sup>1</sup>	Driver seat module.
75	—	Not used.
76	20A <sup>1</sup>	Transmission oil pump.
77	30A <sup>1</sup>	Climate control seat module.
78	40A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
79	40A <sup>1</sup>	Blower motor.
80	—	Not used.
81	40A <sup>1</sup>	Inverter.
82	—	Not used.
83	25A <sup>1</sup>	Right-hand front wiper motor.

## Fuses

Fuse Or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
84	—	Not used.
85	20A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).

<sup>1</sup>M-type fuse.

<sup>2</sup>J-type fuse.

### Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel



Fuse Or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	7.5A <sup>1</sup>	Memory seat. Driver seat lower back support. Panoramic power sunshade (5-door only).
3	20A <sup>1</sup>	Driver door unlock. Fuel flap unlock.
4	5A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).

## Fuses

---

<b>Fuse Or Relay Number</b>	<b>Fuse Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
5	20A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
6	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
7	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
8	10A <sup>2</sup>	Anti-theft alarm horn.
9	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
10	5A <sup>2</sup>	Power decklid module. Telematics control unit.
11	5A <sup>2</sup>	Combined security module.
12	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Front climate control integration module (climate and radio control).
13	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Steering wheel column. Instrument cluster. Data link connector.
14	10A <sup>2</sup>	HEV-Battery electronic control module. Direct current converter.
15	10A <sup>2</sup>	Data link gateway.
16	15A <sup>1</sup>	Child lock. Decklid release.
17	5A <sup>2</sup>	Battery backed-up sounder.
18	5A <sup>2</sup>	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch.
19	7.5A <sup>1</sup>	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
20	7.5A <sup>1</sup>	Headlamp control module.
21	5A <sup>2</sup>	Passenger compartment thermometer. Humidity sensor.
22	5A <sup>2</sup>	Pedestrian sounder.

## Fuses

Fuse Or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
23	10A <sup>1</sup>	Delayed accessory power.
24	20A <sup>1</sup>	Lock-unlock.
25	30A <sup>1</sup>	Driver door window. Driver door mirror.
26	30A <sup>1</sup>	Front passenger door window. Front passenger door mirror.
27	30A <sup>1</sup>	Moonroof.
28	20A <sup>1</sup>	Audio amplifier.
29	30A <sup>1</sup>	Rear driver side door window.
30	30A <sup>1</sup>	Rear passenger side door window.
31	15A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
32	10A <sup>1</sup>	Global positioning system module. Voice control (SYNC). Information and entertainment display. Radio frequency receiver.
33	20A <sup>1</sup>	Radio. Active noise control.
34	30A <sup>1</sup>	Run/start bus (fuse #19, 20, 21, 22, 35, 36, 37, circuit breaker).
35	5A <sup>1</sup>	Restraints control module.
36	15A <sup>1</sup>	Auto-dimming interior mirror. Rear heated seat module. Computer Controlled Dwell module. Lane keeping system module. Auto high beam.
37	15A <sup>1</sup>	Heated steering wheel.
38	30A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).

<sup>1</sup>Micro fuse.

<sup>2</sup>Dual micro fuse.

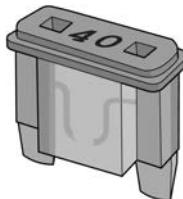
# Fuses

## CHANGING A FUSE

### Fuses



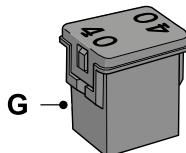
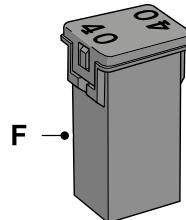
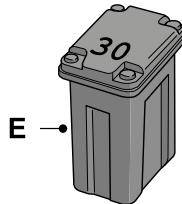
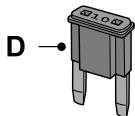
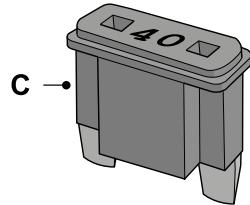
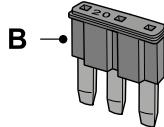
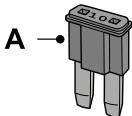
**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

### Fuse Types



E207206

Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini

## Fuses

---

Callout	Fuse Type
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Do not work on a hot engine.



**WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. See **Engine Cooling Fan** (page 320).

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

We recommend that you carry out the following checks.

### Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

### Check When Refueling

- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 330).
- Tire pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 351).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 339).

### Check Monthly

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 319).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 320).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 325).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Lug Nuts** (page 352).

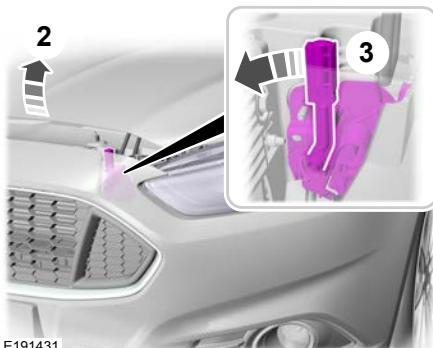
## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



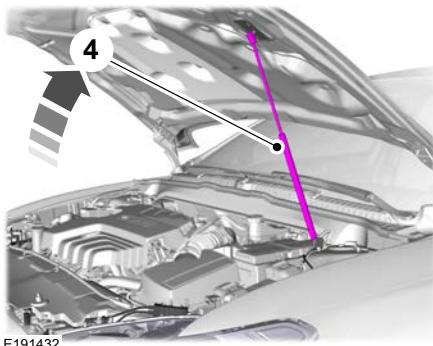
1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
2. Slightly lift the hood.

# Maintenance



E191431

3. Move the catch to the left.



E191432

4. Open the hood. The hood strut automatically supports the hood.

## Closing the Hood

1. Lower the hood to approximately 20 cm (8 in).
2. Firmly push down on the front of the hood to close it fully.

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

**Note:** If the hood does not close fully, open the hood and close it again.

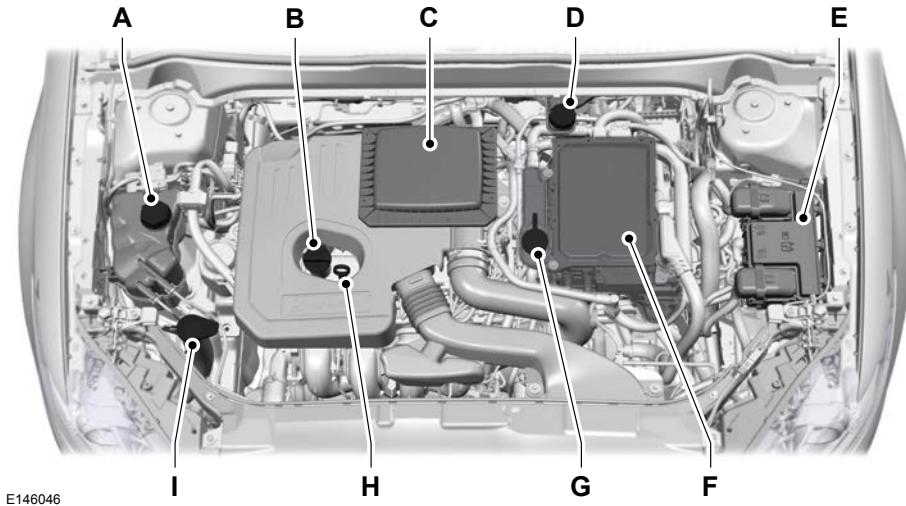
## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L HYBRID



**WARNING:** The inverter system controller contains various high-voltage components that can cause serious bodily harm or death. The inverter system controller is not serviceable and should never be touched, probed, or tampered with.

**Note:** Do not attempt to service any of the high-voltage components or wiring. For easier identification, the high-voltage wiring insulation is color coated orange.

# Maintenance

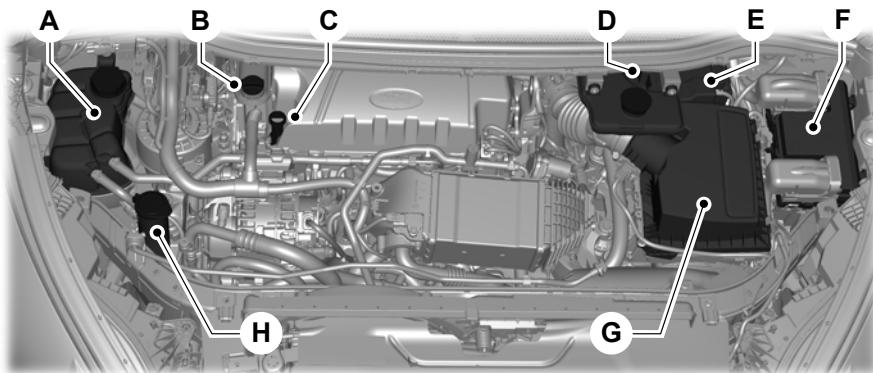


E146046

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 320).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 319).
- C Air filter.
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 325).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 294).
- F Inverter system controller.
- G Inverter system controller coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 320).
- H Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 319).
- I Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 330).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBLUE

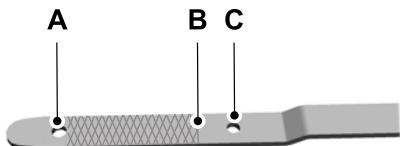


E269968

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 320).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 319).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 319).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 325).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 326).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 294).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 330).

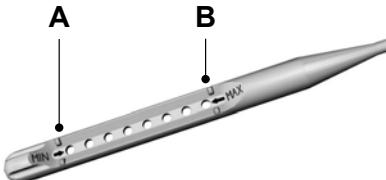
# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L HYBRID



- A Minimum.
- B Nominal.
- C Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L ECOBLUE



E226469

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

**Note:** If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

## Adding Engine Oil



**WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).

# Maintenance

4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

## ENGINE COOLING FAN



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use coolant or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

## Adding Coolant



**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant meeting the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 364). Incorrect prediluted coolant use can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356). Using water that has not been deionized may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

**Note:** Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to Ford specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant meeting the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

**Note:** During normal vehicle operation, the coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the coolant has degraded nor does it require the coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the coolant to be replaced.

Do not mix different colors or types of prediluted coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of prediluted coolant or using an incorrect prediluted coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, qualified personnel:

1. Must drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the cooling system.
3. Refill with prediluted coolant as soon as possible.

# Maintenance

---

Water alone, without prediluted coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used engine coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

## Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection. Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

## Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).

## Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

## How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

# Maintenance

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated



**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

# Maintenance

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. You can continue to drive your vehicle.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park (**P**).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

Your vehicle is equipped with two separate cooling systems. One is for cooling the engine and one is for cooling the inverter system controller that is specific to the hybrid operating system. The two systems operate similarly, with the inverter system controller cooling system generally operating at a lower temperature and pressure.

# Maintenance



E169064

Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks. If the coolant level is on or below the **MIN** mark, add coolant that meets the correct specification immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

## Adding Engine Coolant

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add engine coolant to the **MAX** mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.

**Note:** Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water, or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).

**Note:** In an emergency you can add just water to the cooling system to reach a vehicle service station.

**Note:** Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, for example corrosion, overheating or freezing.

## Adding Inverter System Controller Coolant

1. Open the inverter system controller coolant reservoir cap.
2. Use a funnel to add prediluted coolant to the inverter system controller coolant reservoir. Make sure that the level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the inverter system controller coolant reservoir. Use prediluted coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).
3. Close the inverter system controller coolant reservoir cap.

Whenever you add coolant, check the coolant level in the inverter system controller coolant reservoir the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the inverter system controller coolant level to the proper level.

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 356).

## CLUTCH FLUID CHECK - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 325).

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 316).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

**Note:** If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** If you add electrical accessories or components to your vehicle this may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

# Maintenance

4. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
5. Remove the battery securing clamp.
6. Pull the battery forward.
7. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
8. Remove the battery.
9. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

**Note:** Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Power Windows** (page 85).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

## Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the luggage compartment.

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

# Maintenance

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

**Note:** If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** If you add electrical accessories or components to your vehicle this may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.

2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

4. Remove the battery securing clamp.
5. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
6. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

**Note:** Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Power Windows** (page 85).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

## Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

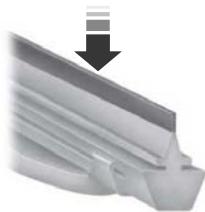
# Maintenance

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution follow the manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

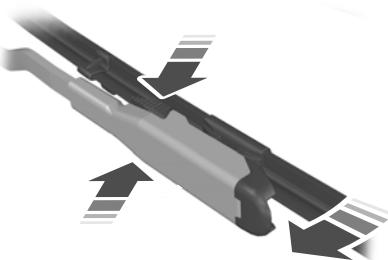
The wiper arms can be manually moved when the ignition is off. This allows for ease of blade replacement and cleaning under the blades.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

## Changing the Front Wiper Blades

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



E239324

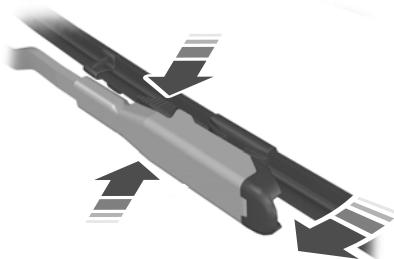
2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.

## Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blades

### 5-Door

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



E239324

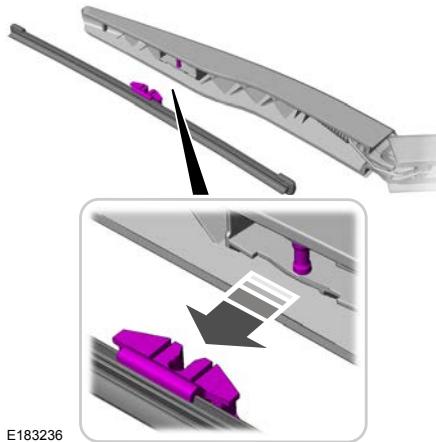
# Maintenance

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.

## Wagon

1. Lift the wiper arm.



2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Install new wiper blades in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield.

## CHANGING A BULB



**WARNING:** Switch all of the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



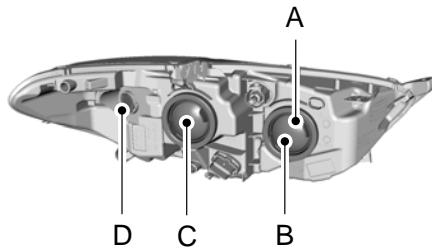
**WARNING:** Bulbs become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 366).

Install in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

## Headlamp

You must remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb.



E159753

- A Front side lamp.
- B High beam.
- C Low beam.
- D Front direction indicator.

## Front Side Lamp

1. Remove the headlamp.
2. Remove the cover.

# Maintenance

3. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## Front Direction Indicator

1. Remove the headlamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

## Headlamp Low Beam

1. Remove the headlamp.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

## Headlamp High Beam

1. Remove the headlamp.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

## High-Intensity Discharge Headlamps

These lamps operate at a high voltage. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

## LED Lamps

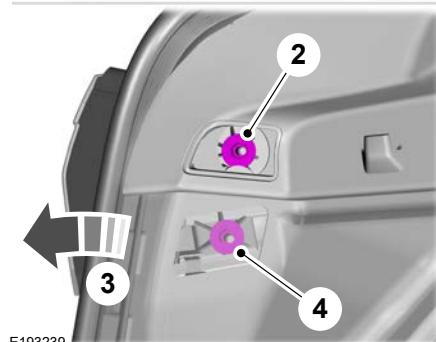
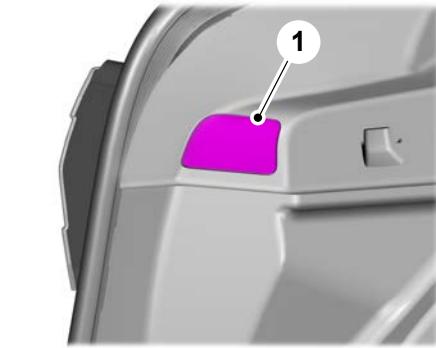
LED lamps are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

The following lamps are LED:

- Brake and rear lamps.
- Central high mounted brake lamp.
- Daytime running lamps.
- Rear direction indicators.
- Side direction indicators.

## Reverse Lamp

### Remove Rear Lamp Assembly, 4-door and 5-door



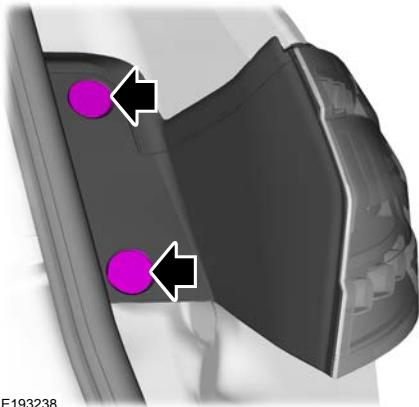
E193239

1. Carefully remove trim plate.
2. Remove the wing nut.

# Maintenance

3. Carefully remove the luggage compartment weather strip and gently pull away the inner body side trim to gain access to the second wing nut.
4. Remove the wing nut.
5. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.

## Remove Rear Lamp Assembly, Wagon



1. Carefully remove the screw caps and remove the screws.
2. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.

## Remove the Bulb



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove the bulb holder.

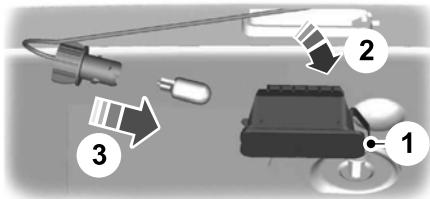


2. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder.

# Maintenance

---

## Replacing the License Plate Lamp Bulb



1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### Cleaning the Exterior Precautions

Immediately remove fuel spillages, AdBlue residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

### Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

### Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.
- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

### Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

**Note:** *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

**Note:** *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

### Cleaning Wheels

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

**Note:** *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

**Note:** *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

# Vehicle Care

## Cleaning the Engine Compartment

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

**Note:** If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

**Note:** If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

## Cleaning Stripes or Graphics

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm (12 in) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa (2,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 82°C (179°F).

**Note:** Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.

## Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

## Cleaning the Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### Cleaning the Instrument Panel



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

## Cleaning Plastic

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## Cleaning Displays and Screens

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

**Note:** Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

**Note:** Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

## Cleaning Leather and Vinyl

We recommend that you only clean the leather and vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.

4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## Cleaning Fabric Seats and Headliners



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the fabric seats and headliners in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.

# Vehicle Care

---

2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

## Cleaning Seatbelts



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## Cleaning Storage Compartments

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## Cleaning Moonroof Tracks

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.

# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold. See **Tire Pressures** (page 351).

**Note:** Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

Only use approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and could make the National Type Approval invalid.

Installation of any tires that are not the original equipment tire size can cause the speedometer to display incorrect vehicle speed.

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT



**WARNING:** Do not use the inflator kit on run flat tires. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



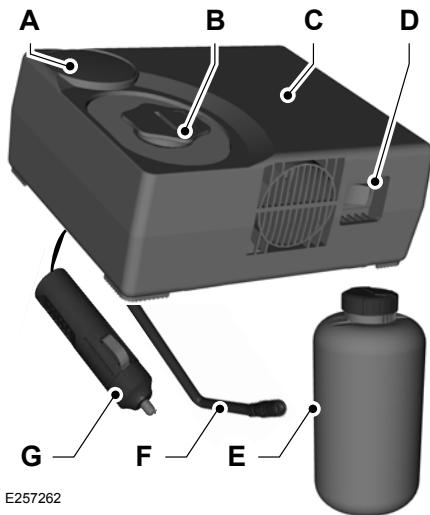
**WARNING:** Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

If your vehicle does not have a spare wheel it has a tire sealant and inflator kit. The kit is in the luggage compartment. Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

**Note:** The kit can only temporarily repair one tire puncture with a maximum puncture size of up to 6 mm (0.24 in).



- A Pressure Gauge.
- B Sealant bottle access cap.
- C Warning label.
- D Power switch.
- E Sealant bottle.
- F Tire inflation pipe.
- G 12 volt DC power point connector.

**Note:** Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

# Wheels and Tires



If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates do the following:

1. Gradually reduce the vehicle speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Check for a punctured tire.

**Note:** Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.

## Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**WARNING:** Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.



**WARNING:** Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.



**WARNING:** Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



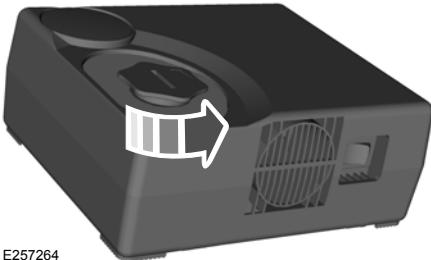
**WARNING:** Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.

To temporarily repair a punctured tire, do the following:



E257263

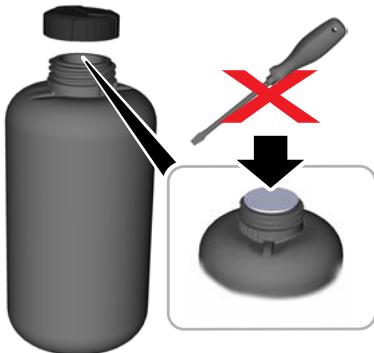
1. Release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



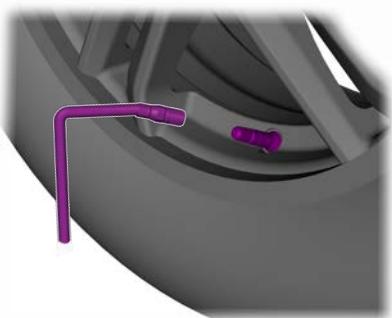
E257264

2. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.

## Wheels and Tires



E256963



E257006

3. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.



E257265

4. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.

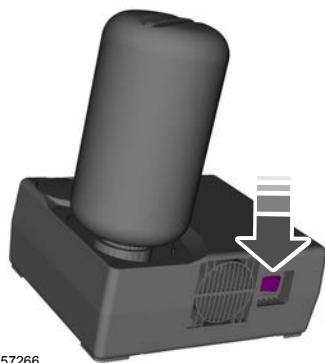
5. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



E257022

6. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector into the 12 volt DC socket. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 154).
7. Start the engine.

# Wheels and Tires



E257266

8. Switch the compressor on.



E257121

9. Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi).

**Note:** If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

10. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and the ignition off.

11. Disconnect the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector.

**Note:** Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

12. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.
13. Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit.



E257942

14. Immediately drive your vehicle for 3–10 km (2–6 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



E257121

# Wheels and Tires

15. After driving between 3–10 km (2–6 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 351).

**Note:** If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

**Note:** If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 1.8 bar (26 psi), use the kit to inflate the tire again.

## After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**WARNING:** If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar (18.9 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

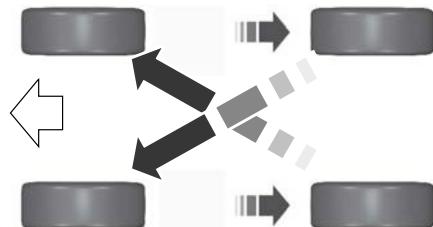
- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.

- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

## TIRE CARE

**Note:** Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.

### Non-directional tires



E142547

### Directional tires



E70415

# Wheels and Tires

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).



**WARNING:** Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

## USING WINTER TIRES



E278852

We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressures** (page 351).



**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Tire Pressures** (page 351).



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains of 10 millimeters or smaller.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

# Wheels and Tires

**Note:** The anti-lock braking system will continue to operate normally.

## Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 212).

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL



**WARNING:** Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.



**WARNING:** Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

If a tire deflates when your vehicle is moving, do the following:

- Firmly hold the steering wheel.
- Avoid heavy braking.
- Gradually reduce the vehicle speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Fully apply the parking brake.
- Switch the ignition off.

The spare wheel, vehicle jack, towing eye, lug nut tool and wheel trim remover are in the luggage compartment under the floor covering or in the side panel.

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner. We recommend that you have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

## Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

If the spare wheel is different to the other fitted road wheels, it may have a warning label with the appropriate maximum speed limit. Drive cautiously when using a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only. Drive the shortest distance possible and have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible. If the dissimilar spare wheel or tire is damaged, it must be replaced.

If you use a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, this can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

# Wheels and Tires

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is different in size and appearance from the road wheels and tires and can be one of three types:

## T-type Mini-spare Wheel

The spare tire has the letter T preceding the tire size, for example T125/80R15 and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

When driving with this type of a dissimilar spare wheel:

- Do not exceed the maximum speed shown on the label.
- Do not load your vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the safety compliance label.
- Do not tow a trailer.
- Do not use snow chains on the end of your vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Do not use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Do not use commercial car washing equipment.

## Full-size Dissimilar Spare Wheel With a Label on the Wheel

The label on the wheel states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with this type of a dissimilar spare wheel:

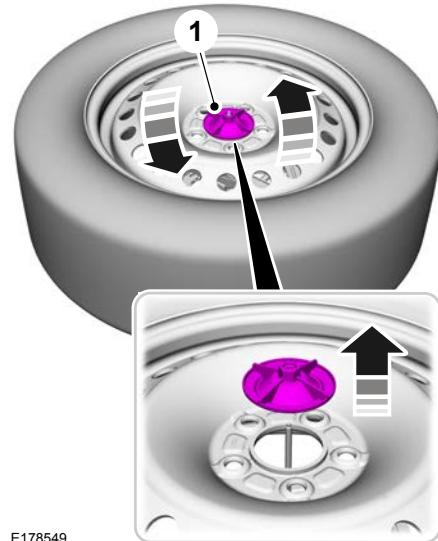
- Do not exceed the maximum speed shown on the label.
- Do not load your vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the safety compliance label.
- Do not tow a trailer.
- Do not use snow chains on the end of your vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.

- Do not use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Do not use commercial car washing equipment.

## Full-size Dissimilar Spare Wheel Without a Label on the Wheel

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

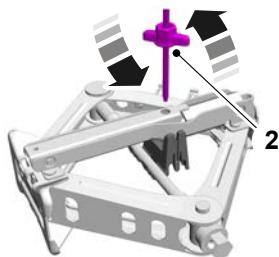
## Removing the Spare Wheel, Vehicle Jack and Lug Nut Tool



E178549

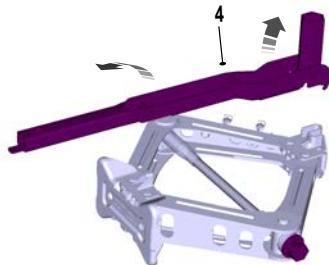
1. Turn the securing nut counterclockwise and remove it. Remove the wheel from the spare wheel well.

# Wheels and Tires



E178548

2. Turn the vehicle jack securing bolt counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Turn the vehicle jack screw counterclockwise to remove the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool from the vehicle jack.



E245204

4. Unfold the vehicle jack handle and the hexagonal end into the correct position prior to use. Use the hexagonal end to operate the vehicle jack screw and to remove the lug nuts.

## Assembling the Lug Nut Tool

Fully unfold the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool.

## Vehicles Without a Spare Wheel

Vehicles without a spare wheel have a temporary mobility kit. See **Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit** (page 339).

## Removing the Wheel Trim (If Equipped)

Use the hook on the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool to remove the wheel trim.

**Note:** Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.

## Vehicle Jack

**WARNING:** Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.

**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1,500 kg (3,307 lb) and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 80 mm (3.1 in).

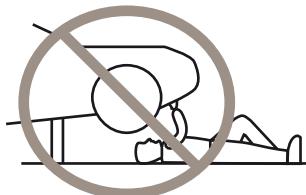
**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.

# Wheels and Tires

**WARNING:** Do not work on your vehicle when the jack is the only support as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

**WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is only supported by a vehicle jack.



## Workshop Type Hydraulic Trolley Jack

**WARNING:** Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1,500 kg (3,307 lb) and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 80 mm (3.1 in.).

We recommend you use a workshop type hydraulic trolley jack for changing between summer and winter tires.



E93020

Refer to vehicle jack manufacturer's instructions.

## Vehicle Jacking Points

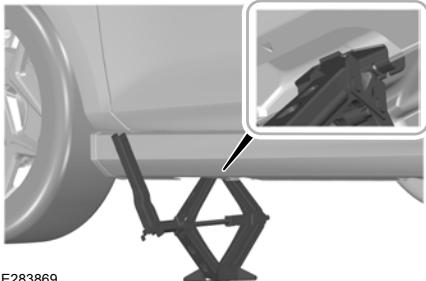
**WARNING:** Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.



E269166

1. Locate the vehicle jacking points. Small arrow-shaped marks indicate the locations.

# Wheels and Tires



E283869

2. Carefully position the vehicle jack onto the vehicle jacking point.
3. Place the hexagonal end of the vehicle jack handle and lug tool onto the vehicle jack.
4. Turn the vehicle jack handle clockwise to raise the vehicle.



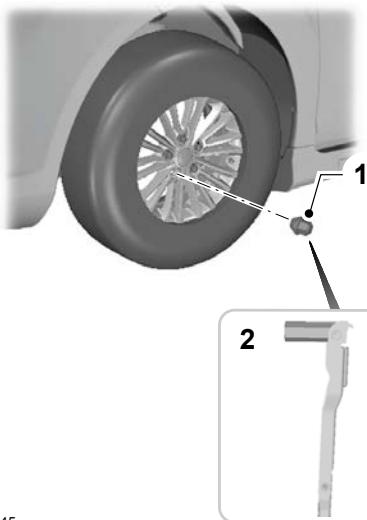
**WARNING:** Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the vehicle jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.



**WARNING:** Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.



E181745

## Removing a Road Wheel



**WARNING:** Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.



**WARNING:** Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.



**WARNING:** Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead.



**WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

1. If your vehicle has locking lug nuts, install the locking lug nut tool and loosen the locking lug nut first.
2. Loosen the lug nuts.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.

**Note:** Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground. This may damage the paint.

# Wheels and Tires

## Installing a Road Wheel



**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.



**WARNING:** Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.



**WARNING:** Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Contact an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.



**WARNING:** Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

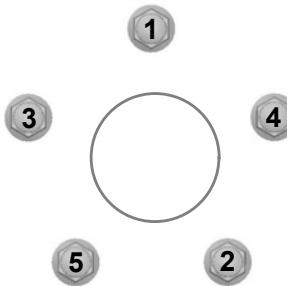


**WARNING:** Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.



1. Inspect the wheel pilot bore (**A**) and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.
2. Install the wheel.
3. Install the lug nuts finger tight.

**Note:** Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.



E75442

4. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
6. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Lug Nuts** (page 352).

# Wheels and Tires

7. Carefully install the wheel trim.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

## TIRE PRESSURES

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

**Note:** You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.

### Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/60R16 95V <sup>1</sup>	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.5 (36)	3.2 (46)
215/60R16 99XL V <sup>1</sup>	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.5 (36)	3.2 (46)
215/60R16 95W <sup>1</sup>	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.5 (36)	3.2 (46)
215/55R17 98XL V <sup>1</sup>	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.5 (36)	3.2 (46)
215/55R17 98XL W <sup>1</sup>	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.5 (36)	3.2 (46)
235/45R18 98XL W	2.5 (36)	2.2 (32)	2.6 (38)	2.9 (42)
235/45R18 98XL Y	2.4 (35)	2.2 (32)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)
235/40R19 96XL W	2.6 (38)	2.2 (32)	2.6 (38)	2.9 (42)

<sup>1</sup>Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Using Snow Chains** (page 344).

### Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or under trailer tow conditions up to 100 km/h (62 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/60R16 95V	2.5 (36)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	3.2 (46)
215/60R16 99XL V	2.5 (36)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)	3.2 (46)
215/60R16 95W	2.5 (36)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)	3.2 (46)

# Wheels and Tires

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/55R17 98XL V	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	3.2 (46)
215/55R17 98XL W	2.5 (36)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	3.2 (46)
235/45R18 98XL W	2.5 (36)	2.2 (32)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)
235/45R18 98XL Y	2.4 (35)	2.2 (32)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)
235/40R19 96XL W	2.7 (39)	2.2 (32)	2.9 (42)	3.1 (45)

## Temporary Spare Wheel



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
215/60R16 95V	3.2 (45)
215/60R16 95W	3.2 (45)
T125/80R16 97M	4.2 (60)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

## LUG NUTS

### Lug Nut Torque

Nm ( lb.ft)
135 (100)

### Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The warning lamp can illuminate when:

- You use a spare wheel or a tire sealant and inflator kit.
- The outside air temperature drops significantly. The tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp. Check each tire to verify that none are flat. Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

**Note:** Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

**Note:** After you inflate the tires to the correct pressure, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning lamp to turn off.

## VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist**.
2. Select **Tyre monitor**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

## RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

**Note:** If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist.**

2. Select **Tyre monitor.**
3. Select **Tyre pressure.**
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps



The low tire pressure warning lamp combines functions.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly underinflated	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. See <b>Tire Pressures</b> (page 351). Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages

Message	Action
Tyre pressure low	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	The temporary spare wheel is either in use or the system has detected a fault in the sensor that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - 4-DOOR

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,872 (191.8)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,130 (83.9)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,465–1,496 (57.7–58.9)
Wheelbase.	2,850 (112.2)
Front track.	1,589–1,599 (62.6–63.0)
Rear track.	1,585–1,595 (62.4–62.8)

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - 5-DOOR

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,872 (191.8)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,130 (83.9)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,466–1,518 (57.7–59.8)
Wheelbase.	2,850 (112.2)
Front track.	1,589–1,599 (62.6–63.0)
Rear track.	1,585–1,595 (62.4–62.8)

## Capacities and Specifications

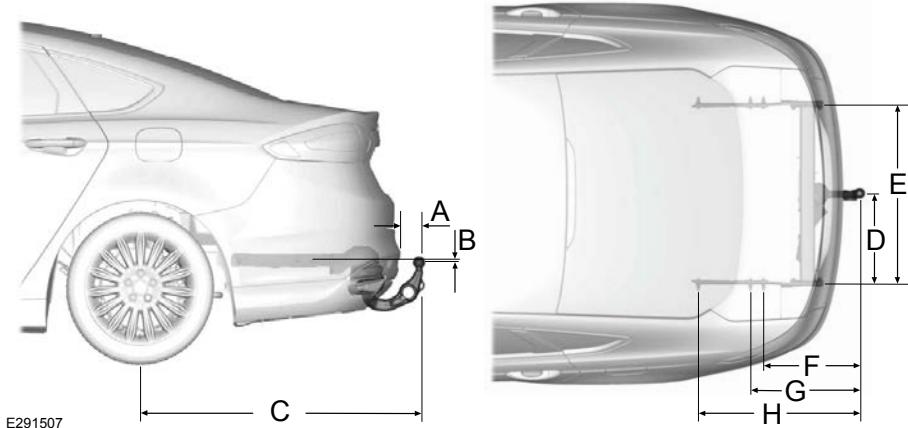
---

### VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - WAGON

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,869 (191.7)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,130 (83.9)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,482–1,550 (58.3–61.0)
Wheelbase.	2,850 (112.2)
Front track.	1,589–1,599 (62.6–63.0)
Rear track.	1,585–1,595 (62.4–62.8)

## Capacities and Specifications

### TOWBAR DIMENSIONS - 4-DOOR/5-DOOR



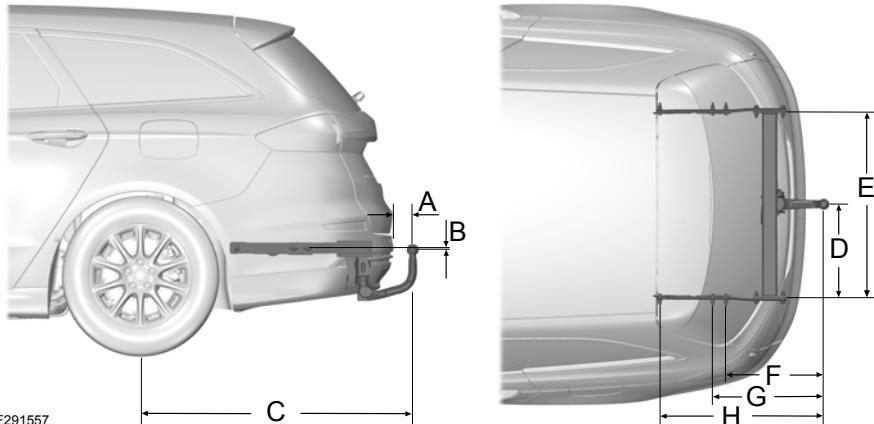
Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	79 (3.1)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	4 (0.2)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,165 (45.9)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	426 (16.8)
E	Distance between side members.	862 (33.9)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	450 (17.7)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	511 (20.1)
H	Center of tow ball to center of third attachment point.	753 (29.6)

#### Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

90 kg (198 lb)

# Capacities and Specifications

## TOWBAR DIMENSIONS - WAGON



Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	80 (3.1)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	4 (0.2)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,163 (45.8)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	426 (16.8)
E	Distance between side members.	862 (33.9)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	448 (17.6)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	509 (20.0)
H	Center of tow ball to center of third attachment point.	751 (29.6)

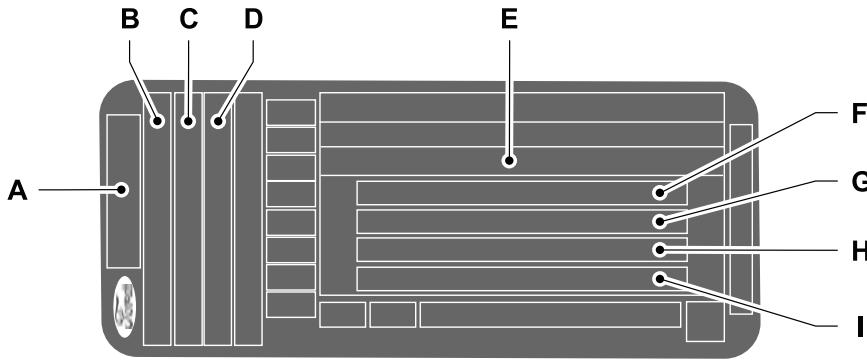
# Capacities and Specifications

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight
90 kg (198 lb)

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

**Note:** Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

**Note:** The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.



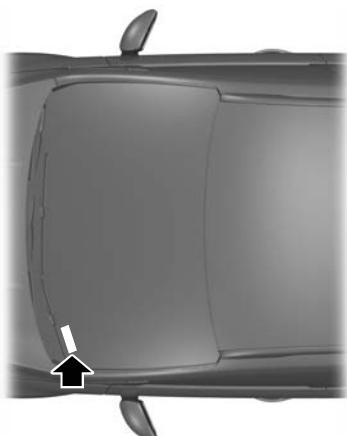
- A Model
- B Variant
- C Engine designation
- D Engine power and emission level
- E Vehicle identification number
- F Gross vehicle weight
- G Gross train weight
- H Maximum front axle weight
- I Maximum rear axle weight

Your vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate, located at the bottom of the lock side of the right-hand door aperture.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.

# Capacities and Specifications



Stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the front seat.

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L HYBRID

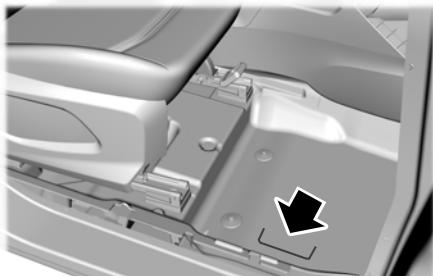
Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

E163915

On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E163913

### Engine

#### Engine Oil

#### Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	4.3 L (0.9 gal)

**Note:** The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 0.9 L (0.2 gal).

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

### Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

**Note:** Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.1 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

## Engine Coolant

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	7 L (1.5 gal)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2

## Fuel Tank

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	49 L (10.8 gal)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Washer Reservoir

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	4.5 L (1.0 gal)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

## Brake System

### Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBLUE

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

## Engine

### Engine Oil

#### Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.4 L (1.4 gal)

**Note:** The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1.9 L (0.4 gal).

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A

### Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, you can top-up with a SAE 0W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2.

**Note:** Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

## Engine Coolant

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles without a fuel fired heater or an auxiliary heater.	10.7 L (2.4 gal)
Vehicles with a fuel fired heater.	11.4 L (2.5 gal)
Vehicles with an auxiliary heater.	12 L (2.6 gal)
Vehicles with a fuel fired heater and an auxiliary heater.	12.7 L (2.8 gal)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

## Fuel Tank

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Front wheel drive.	60 L (13.2 gal)
All-wheel drive.	61 L (13.4 gal)

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) Tank

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	11.2 L (2.5 gal)

## Washer Reservoir

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	4.5 L (1.0 gal)

### Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

## Brake System

### Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

### Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front direction indicator. <sup>1</sup>	W5W	5
Daytime running lamps. <sup>1</sup>	H15	15
Headlamp high beam. <sup>1</sup>	H15	55

## Capacities and Specifications

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Headlamp low beam. <sup>1</sup>	H7	55
Front fog lamp. <sup>1</sup>	H8	35
Side direction indicator. <sup>1</sup>	PWY19W	19
Rear lamp and stoplamp.	LED.	LED.
Central high mounted stoplamp.	LED.	LED.
Rear direction indicator.	LED.	LED.
Rear fog lamp.	LED.	LED.
Reversing lamps.	W16W	16
License plate lamp.	W5W	5

<sup>1</sup>These lamps are also available as LED lamps.

**Note:** If the LED fails have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Interior lamp.	LED.	LED.
Luggage compartment lamp.	LED.	LED.
Map reading lamp.	LED.	LED.

**Note:** If the LED fails have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

### Fuel Economy and CO2 Emissions

The declared fuel/energy consumptions, CO2-Emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. Light Duty Vehicle type-approved using the World Harmonised Light Vehicle Test Procedure (WLTP) will have Fuel/Energy Consumption and CO2-Emission information for New European Drive Cycle (NEDC) and WLTP. WLTP will fully replace the NEDC latest by the end of the year 2020. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

During NEDC phase-out, WLTP fuel consumption and CO2 emissions are being correlated back to NEDC. There will be some variance to the previous fuel economy and emissions as some elements of the tests have altered, so the same car might have different fuel consumption and CO2 emissions.

### European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel consumption and CO2 emissions. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 2.0L HYBRID

### NEDC

Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
4.9–4.2 (58–67)	96–111

### WLTP

Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
6.2–5.5 (46–51)	127–142

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 2.0L ECOBLUE

#### NEDC

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
6.4–5.3 (44–53)	4.9–3.6 (58–78)	5.6–4.4 (50–64)	115–146

#### WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
8.8–6.4 (32–44)	6.9–5.1 (41–55)	6–4.3 (47–66)	6.9–4.9 (41–58)	6.9–5 (41–56)	130–180

# Connected Vehicle

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### What Is the Modem



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

### Enabling and Disabling the Modem

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **FordPass Connect**.
3. Press **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

### Connecting FordPass to the Modem

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option for vehicle details.
5. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
6. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
7. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

### CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Wi-Fi**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View available networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

## Connected Vehicle

---

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING – VEHICLES WITH: MODEM

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Modem is not enabled.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch connectivity features on.</li></ul></li><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li></ul>

# Connected Vehicle

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING – VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Password error.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter the correct network password.</li></ul></li><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li><li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li></ul></li></ul>
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li></ul>
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Obstructed network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li></ul></li></ul>
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Hidden network.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li></ul></li></ul>

## Connected Vehicle

---

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– System limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.</li><li>• The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.</li></ul></li></ul>
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li><li>– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– No software update available.</li><li>– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li></ul></li></ul>

# Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

---

## CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.

**Note:** The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Edit**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi visibility**.

**Note:** The Wi-Fi Visibility default setting is on.

## Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
4. Select **Settings**.

**Note:** The SSID is the hotspot name.

5. Select **View password**.

## Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, turn on Wi-Fi and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

## Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

**Note:** Secure websites do not redirect.

**Note:** If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

**Note:** If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

**Note:** If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

## CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Edit**.
6. Select **Change SSID name**.
7. Enter your required SSID.
8. Select **Done**.
9. Select **Change password**.
10. Enter your required password.
11. Select **Done**.

# Audio System

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

### CD and CD Player Information

**Note:** CD units play commercially pressed 12 cm (4.7 in) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.

**Note:** Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.

**Note:** Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

**Note:** Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

### MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

# Audio System

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

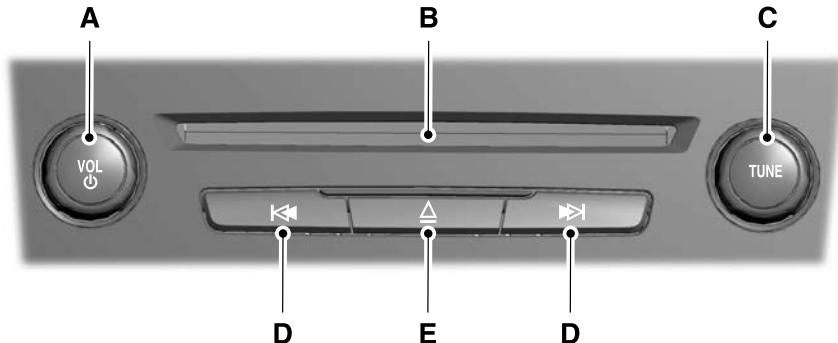
## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SONY AUDIO SYSTEM



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.

# Audio System



E248209

- A **VOL and Power:** Press to turn the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.
- B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- C **TUNE:** Turn to search the frequency in individual increments.
- D **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In Media mode, press to select the next or previous track. Press and hold to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.
- E **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

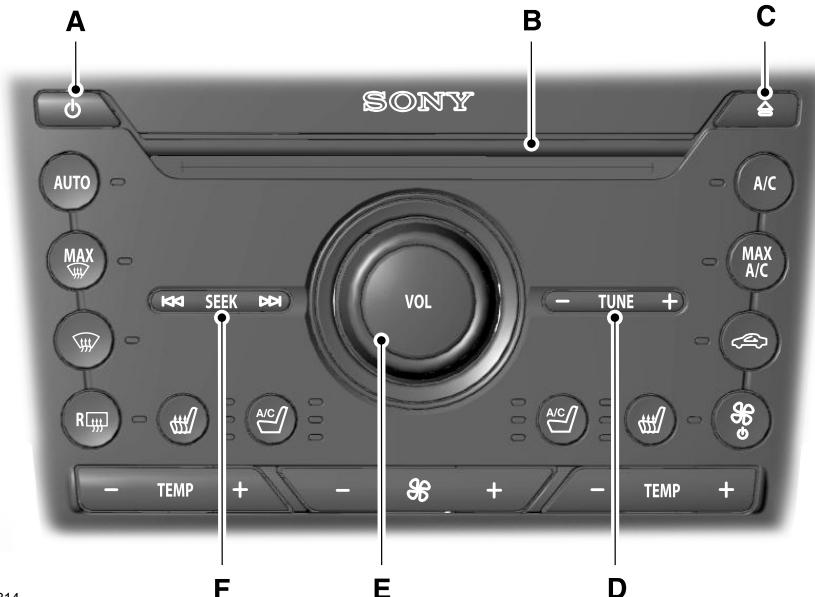
## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AUDIO SYSTEM

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the

safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your SYNC information.

# Audio System



E185814

- A **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off.
- B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- C **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.
- D **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band.
- E **Volume:** Turn to adjust the volume.
- F **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In Media mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.

## Menu Structure

**Note:** Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different.

Press the menu button.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options.

Press the right arrow to enter a menu.  
Press the left arrow to exit a menu.

Press the ok button to confirm a selection.

# Audio System

<b>Radio</b>	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
AST	Select to store the six strongest local stations on the AM-AST and FM-AST frequency bands.
Radio text *	Select to display extra information such as artist name.

\*Extra information may not always be available.

<b>Audio Settings</b>	
Alternative Frequency	With the alternative frequency option active, the system re-tunes to a different frequency with better reception for the same station.
Regional Mode	Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies, switching between regionally related networks.
News announcement	With the news announcement option active, the system interrupts the active audio source to provide incoming news announcements, if the currently tuned station (or last tuned station in case of other active media) supports news.
Service linking *	With Service Linking active the system automatically switches from DAB to FM, in case DAB becomes unavailable.
Adaptive volume	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between 0 and +7.
Sound	Select to adjust settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.

# Audio System

<b>Audio Settings</b>	
DSP occupancy	Select to optimize sound quality for the chosen seating position.
DSP	Choose between the stereo modes. Only with the external sound systems.

\* Only within DAB variants.

<b>CD Settings</b>	
Scan All	Select to scan all disc selections.
Scan Folder	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.

<b>Clock Settings</b>	
Set date and time	Select to set the time and calendar date.
24-hour	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.

<b>Display Settings</b>	
Dimming	Select to change display brightness.
Language	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
Temp. Setting	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius.

The following formats are supported:

- DAB.
- DAB+.
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

## Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

## DIGITAL RADIO

### General Information

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

**Note:** Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

# Audio System

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

**Note:** When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.

## Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 375).

**Note:** If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.

**Note:** The system displays the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.

**Note:** The sound quality changes when your system switches from DAB to the corresponding FM station.

## Using Digital Audio Broadcast on a Non-Touchscreen

### Selecting Radio Band

DAB1 and DAB2 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB1** or **DAB2**.
4. You can also press the **RADIO** button multiple times to toggle through all wavebands.

**Note:** When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning will skip to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio will briefly mute.

## Radio Station Tuning Control

### Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

### Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press function button 1.
2. Press the left or right arrow buttons to change ensembles. Press the up or down arrow buttons to navigate to your required radio station.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

**Note:** The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.

### Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

1. Turn the **TUNE** dial to the left or right.

## Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 10 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. When the system stores the station, a message appears. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

**Note:** Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system mutes when this happens. This may result in unexpected changes to radio station presets.

# Audio System

## Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select a radio station and press function button 3.

**Note:** Extra information may not always be available.

## Using Digital Audio Broadcast and SYNC with Touchscreen

### Selecting Radio Band

DAB1, DAB2 and DAB3 operate in the same way. You can store up to 6 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB1, DAB2 or DAB3**.

**Note:** When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning skips to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio briefly mutes.

### Radio Station Tuning Control

#### Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

#### Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press the browse button.
2. Press the left or right arrow keys to change ensembles. Navigate through the list and select the station by pressing the touchscreen area displaying your selection.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

**Note:** The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.

### Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

1. Press the tune buttons. Press and hold to move through the waveband quickly.
2. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

### Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 6 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. When the system stores the station, a message appears. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored, press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

**Note:** Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system mutes when this happens. This may result in unexpected changes to radio station presets.

### Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on select **Options > Radio Text On**.

**Note:** Extra information may not always be available.

## USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the

# Audio System

safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E205592

The USB Port is below the climate control. You can use the USB port to play media and charge a device.

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

### Phone Voice Service

This system allows you to use the voice recognition features of your phone and focus on your driving.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel.

**Note:** This only works when connected via **Bluetooth®**.

**Note:** When using voice recognition use the language set on the device.

**Note:** We recommend that you check your data plan before using your phone voice service through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## About SYNC

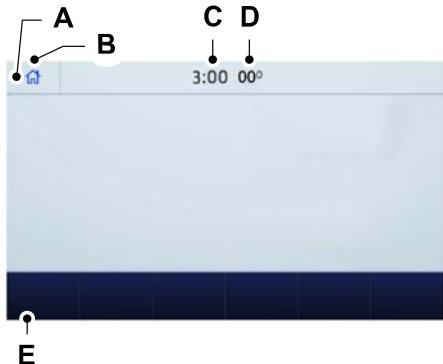
The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

**Note:** You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

**Note:** You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

## Using the Touchscreen



- A Status bar.
- B Home screen.
- C Clock. See **Settings** (page 408).
- D Outside air temperature.
- E Feature bar.

## Status Bar

	Cell phone microphone muted.
	Audio system muted.
	Software update installed.
	Wi-Fi connected.
	Cell phone roaming.
	Text message received.

	Emergency Assistance off.
	Cell phone network signal strength.
	Vehicle data sharing on.
	Vehicle location sharing on.
	Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.
	Traffic data source: Live traffic.
	Traffic data source: Traffic broadcast.
	Wireless charger active.

## Feature Bar

	Select to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a Bluetooth device. See <b>Entertainment</b> (page 392).
	Select to adjust climate settings. See <b>Climate</b> (page 394).
	Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See <b>Phone</b> (page 397).
	Select to use the navigation system. See <b>Navigation</b> (page 399).
	Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See <b>Apps</b> (page 407).

	Select to adjust system settings. See <b>Settings</b> (page 408).
---	---

## Cleaning the Touchscreen

See **Cleaning Displays and Screens** (page 337).

## Updating the System

### Updating the System Using a USB Drive

#### Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.
3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.
4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

#### Installing an Update

**Note:** You can use the system when installation is in progress.

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

**Note:** Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.

### Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

#### Switching Automatic System Updates On

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Automatic updates**.
3. Switch **Automatic system updates** on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** You can use the system when download is in progress.

**Note:** If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

## Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 370).

## Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel and wait for the voice prompt.

**Note:** Press the voice control button again to interrupt a voice prompt and begin speaking.

**Note:** Turn the volume control when a voice prompt plays to adjust the volume.

**Note:** Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri on your iOS device.

The following voice commands are designed to help you from any screen:

- **List of commands**
- **Help**

The following tables list some of the more frequently used voice commands. For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.

## General

Voice Command	Description
list of commands	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. <sup>1</sup>
Cancel	Cancel an active voice session.
help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. <sup>1</sup>
Back	Return to the previous screen.
Main menu	Go to the main menu.

# SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Description
Next page	Go to the next page.
Previous page	Go to the previous page.

<sup>1</sup>Add the name of the feature to the command.

## Entertainment

### Audio Source

Voice Command	Description
Radio	Use the radio.
CD Player	Use the CD player.
Bluetooth audio	Use a Bluetooth device.
USB	Use a USB or media player.

### Radio

Voice Command	Description
AM	Listen to AM radio.
___ AM	Tune to a specific AM frequency. <sup>1</sup>
DAB	Listen to DAB radio.
FM	Listen to FM radio.
___ FM	Tune to a specific FM frequency. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Add the radio frequency to two decimal places to the command.

**USB and Media Player**

Voice Command	Description
Play album __	
Play artist __	
Play audiobook __	
Play genre __	Play your music by category. <sup>1</sup>
Play playlist __	
Play podcast __	
Play song __	
Browse all albums	
Browse all artists	
Browse all audiobooks	
Browse all genres	Browse music on a USB device.
Browse all playlists	
Browse all podcasts	
Browse all tracks	
Browse album __	
Browse artist __	
Browse audiobook __	
Browse genre __	Browse your music by category on a USB device. <sup>1</sup>
Browse playlist __	
Browse podcast __	

<sup>1</sup> Add an album name, artist name, audiobook name, genre name, playlist name, podcast name or track name to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

**Phone**

<b>Voice Command</b>	<b>Description</b>
Pair phone	Pair a cell phone or Bluetooth enabled device.
Redial	Redial the last number that you dialed.
Dial __	Dial a number. <sup>1</sup>
Call __	Call a specific contact from your phonebook. <sup>2</sup>
Call __ __	Call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location. <sup>3</sup>
Listen to message	Listen to a text message.
Listen to message __	Listen to a specific text message from a list of text messages.
Reply to message	Reply to the last text message.

<sup>1</sup> Add the number you want to dial to the command.

<sup>2</sup> Add a contact name from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

<sup>3</sup> Add a contact name and location from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

**Navigation (If Equipped)****Setting a Destination**

<b>Voice Command</b>	<b>Description</b>
Find an address	Enter a destination address. When prompted, provide the house number, the street and city.
Find a POI	Search for a point of interest by name or by category.
Find nearest __	Search for a nearby point of interest by category. <sup>1</sup>
Find a POI category	Search for a point of interest category. <sup>1</sup>
Destination home	Set your saved home address as your destination.
Destination work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
Favourite destinations	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.

<sup>1</sup>Add a point of interest category or the name of a major brand or chain to the command.

**Route Guidance**

<b>Voice Command</b>	<b>Description</b>
Cancel route	Cancel the current route.
Reroute	Select an alternate route.
Repeat last instruction	Repeat the last guidance prompt.
Show route	Display an overview of the route.
Show map	Display the map on the touchscreen.
Show north up	Display a two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show heading up	Display a two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show 3D	Display a three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

## Apps

### General

Voice Command	Description
Mobile apps	Start an app. The system prompts you for the app name.
List apps	Get a list of apps running on your device.
Find apps	Search and connect to apps running on your device.

### Active App

Voice Command	Description
__ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific app. <sup>1</sup>
Close __	Close an app. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Add an app name to the command.

## Voice Settings

Voice Command	Description
Voice settings	Go to the voice settings menu.
Interaction mode standard	Switch long voice prompts on.
Interaction mode advanced	Switch short voice prompts on.
Call confirmation on	Switch call confirmation on. The system prompts you to confirm before making a call.
Call confirmation off	Switch call confirmation off. The system does not prompt you to confirm before making a call.
Voice command lists on	Switch the display of voice commands on.
Voice command lists off	Switch the display of voice commands off.

## Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction

If necessary, the system decreases the blower motor speed when you are using voice commands to reduce the amount of background noise in your vehicle. It returns to normal when you are finished.

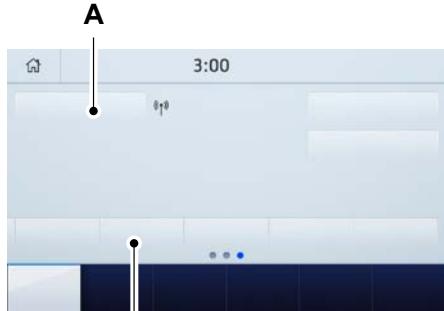
## Switching Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction Off

Simultaneously press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.

## ENTERTAINMENT



Select the audio option on the feature bar.



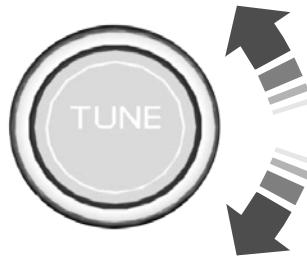
- A Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.
- B Presets. Swipe left to view more presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

## Using the Radio

### Setting an AM/FM Radio Station

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **AM** or **FM**.



3. Rotate the control to change the frequency.

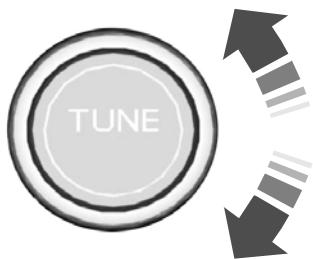
### Selecting a FM Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **FM**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

### Selecting a Digital Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **DAB**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select an ensemble.
5. Select a radio station from the list.

## Manually Changing Digital Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change the station.

## Automatically Changing Radio Stations

- Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.
- Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.
- Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.
- Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

## Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons.

**Note:** The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.

**Note:** You can add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

## Switching Traffic Announcements On

Select **Traffic (TA)**.

**Note:** If you switch traffic announcements on, traffic announcements broadcast by radio stations interrupt the current audio source to help you plan your route.

## Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 397).

Select **Sources**.



Select Bluetooth.

## Searching for Tracks on a Bluetooth Device

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

**Note:** Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

## Playing Tracks on a Bluetooth Device in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

## Repeating Tracks on a Bluetooth Device



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

**Note:** You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format Bluetooth device. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a Bluetooth device.

**Note:** A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

## Playing Music From a USB or Media Player

Connect your device to a USB port.

Select **Sources**.



Select USB.

**Note:** The system indexes your music before you can play it.

## Searching for Tracks on a USB or Media Player

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

**Note:** Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

**Note:** You can also browse by album, artist, audiobook, genre, playlist, podcast or track name.

## Playing Tracks on a USB or Media Player in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

## Repeating Tracks on a USB or Media Player



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

**Note:** You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format USB or media player. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a USB or media player.

**Note:** A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

## Supported Devices

The system supports most USB and media players, including iOS and Android devices.

## Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, MP4, WMA, WAV, AAC, AIFF, APE, DSD, and FLAC audio file formats.
- MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC file extensions.
- FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.

## Audio File Metadata

The system organizes files on your USB or media player by metadata tags. Metadata tags contain information about the file. If the metadata tags for the files on your USB or media player contain no information, the system classifies them as unknown. The system can index up to 50000 tracks on a USB device or media player, and up to 10 devices.

## CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access your climate control features.

**Note:** You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 408).

## Accessing the Climate Control Menu



Touch the button to access additional controls for the front climate system.

## Directing the Airflow



Touch the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

## Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air that circulates in your vehicle.

## Setting the Temperature

Touch up or down on the left-hand temperature control to set the left-hand temperature.

**Note:** This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Touch up or down on the right-hand temperature control to set the right-hand temperature.

## Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on automatic operation, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

## Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



A pop-up appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.

**MAX A/C:** Touch the button to activate and maximize cooling. The driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

**A/C:** Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

**Note:** In certain conditions, such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

## Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Touch the button.

## Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

## Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

## Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off



Touch the button.

## Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off



Touch the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

## Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off



Touch the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog.

## Switching the Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

## Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off



Touch the button.

## Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Touch the button for maximum cooling.

Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

## Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Touch the button for maximum defrosting.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

## Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with **A/C**, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

## Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

## Accessing Rear Climate Controls



Touch the button to access additional controls for the rear climate system.

## Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator



Touch the button.

When on, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

## Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on rear automatic operation, then set the temperature.

## Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

## Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

## Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

## PHONE



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

## Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your cell phone and switch Bluetooth on. Make sure your cell phone is discoverable. See your cell phone's user manual.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Pair phone**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

## Using Your Cell Phone

### Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

## **Contacts**

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

## **Your phone**

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another cell phone.

## **Change device**

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

## **Do not disturb**

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

## **Phone Keypad**

Directly dial a number.

## **Text messages**

Display the cell phone messages.

## **Siri**

Connect to Siri on your iOS device.

## **Using Text Messaging**

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

## **Apple CarPlay**

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.

## **Switching Apple CarPlay Off**

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay preferences**.

3. Switch **Apple CarPlay** off.

## Android Auto

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

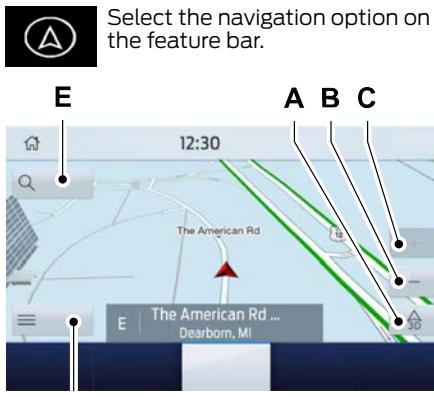
**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

## Switching Android Auto Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Android Auto**.
3. Switch **Android Auto** off.

## NAVIGATION

**Note:** For more information, refer to the local Ford website.

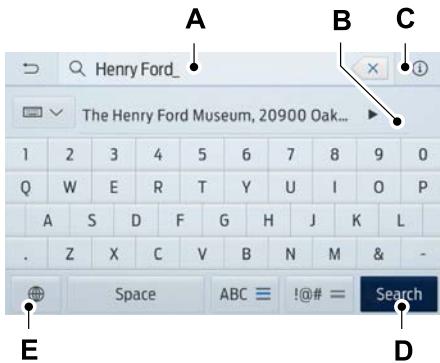


A Map view menu.  
B Zoom out.

C Zoom in.  
D Route guidance menu.  
E Destination entry menu.

## Setting a Destination

### Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen



A Text entry field.  
B Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.  
C Information icon.  
D Search.  
E Keyboard settings.

**Note:** Select one of the suggestions to copy the detail to the text entry field.

**Note:** You can enter a destination in a number of formats, **city street number**, **city number street**, zip code or point of interest.

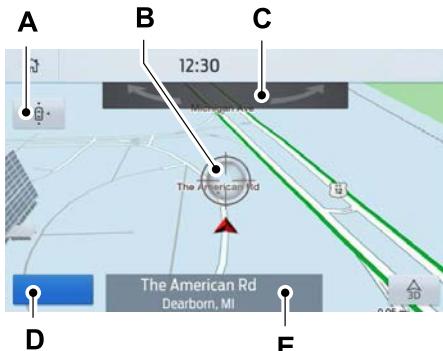
**Note:** You do not have to enter the destination country.

**Note:** To enter mutated vowels or accented characters, for example **ä** or **é**, press and hold the corresponding character on the keyboard.

Select **Search**.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

### Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen



- A Re-center the map.
- B Selected location.
- C 3D map rotation. Swipe left or right.
- D Start route guidance.
- E Destination name.

Select the location on the map.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

### Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following formats:

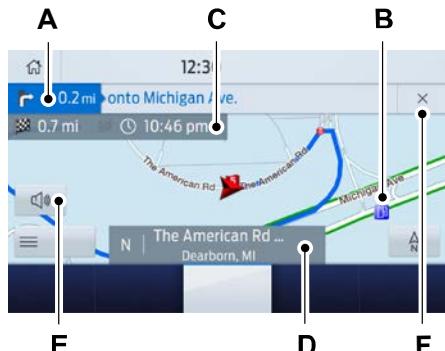
- A two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

### Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

**Note:** You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

### Route Guidance



- A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last guidance prompt.
- B Point of interest.
- C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
- D Current road.
- E Mute guidance prompts.
- F Cancel route guidance.

**Note:** To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.

**Route Guidance Menu**

Menu Item	Description
Screen view	Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active.
Full map	View a full screen map when route guidance is active.
Motorway exit info	View exit information for your current route.
Turn list	View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it.
Traffic list	View traffic nearby or on your current route. <sup>1</sup>
Navigation settings	Adjust navigation settings.
Where am I?	View information about your current location.
Cancel route	Cancel route guidance.
Show route	View the entire current route on the map.
Re-route	View an alternative route compared to your current one.
Edit waypoints	Change the order or remove waypoints.
Optimise order	The system determines the order of waypoints for you.
Start	Go to the next screen and start the new route.
Search	Enter a destination address.
Home	Set your saved home address as your destination
Work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Favourites	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
POI	Display the point of interest categories.

<sup>1</sup>Reliant upon traffic message channel or live traffic.

### **Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume**

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

**Note:** If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.

## Muting Guidance Prompts

 Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

**Note:** The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.

## Adding Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. You can add up to five waypoints.

1. Select the search option on the map.
2. Set a destination.
3. Select the flag icon.
4. Select **Start**.

## Cancelling Route Guidance

### Cancelling Route Guidance From the Route Guidance Menu

 Select the route guidance menu option on the active guidance screen.

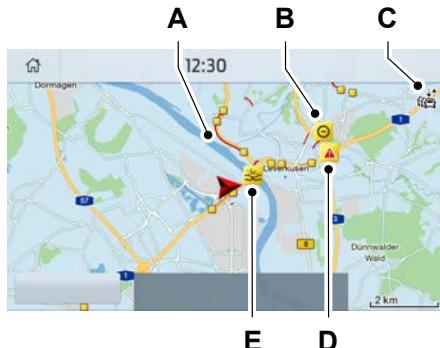
Select **Cancel route**.

### Cancelling Route Guidance From the Main Map

 Select the icon in the upper right-hand corner of the main map to cancel route guidance.

## Live Traffic (If Equipped)

Live traffic provides near real-time traffic information to help you plan the fastest route to your destination. You must have an active subscription for Live Traffic.



- A Traffic congestion.
- B Road closure.
- C Live traffic active.
- D Urgent warning.
- E Traffic incident.

## Switching Live Traffic On

**Note:** Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network** (page 370).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.

## Navigation Map Updates

Please check the local Ford website or contact your dealership for navigation map updates.

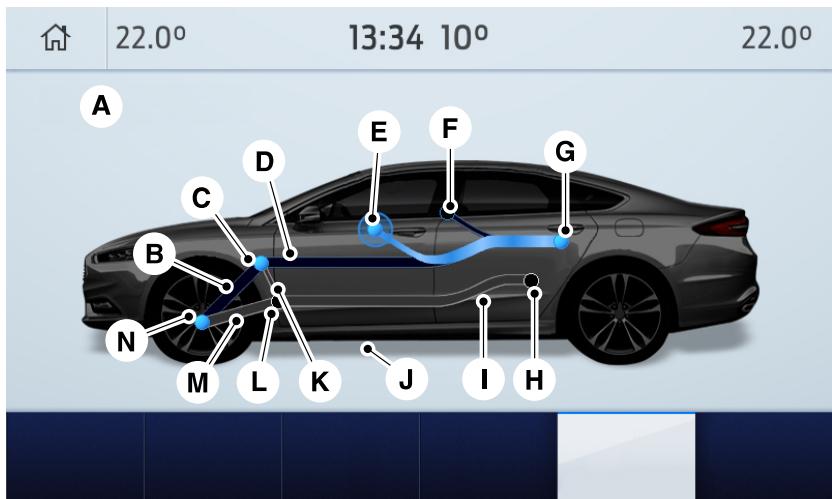
HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you can report them directly to HERE by visiting [www.here.com](http://www.here.com). HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

## ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION

### Power Flow



The power flow information for your Hybrid vehicle is available through the Apps section of the touch screen.



Callout	Item	Description	
A	Power	This indicates which mode is active within the vehicle system.	
		Menu Item	Action and Description
		Status: Hybrid drive	The electric motor and gasoline engine are powering the vehicle.

## SYNC™ 3

Callout	Item	Description	
		Status: charging high voltage battery	The hybrid system is storing power in the high-voltage battery.
		Status: Idle	The vehicle is either at rest, or sharing very little power between the electric system parts.
		Status: Electric drive	The vehicle is driving in electric mode (the power is coming from the electric motor). The gasoline engine is off in this mode.
B	Motor-to-Wheel Flow	Shows the direction of power flow between the wheels and the electric motor.	
C	Electric motor	Represents the hybrid electric motor. The higher the motor power is, the larger the circle around this node. Any time the vehicle is ready to be driven, the motor node illuminates.	
D	Battery-to- <sup>1</sup> Motor Flow	Shows the direction of power flow between the high-voltage battery and the electric motor. Flow toward the motor indicates the battery is providing power to accelerate the vehicle (discharging the battery). Flow toward the battery indicates the electric motor is providing power to the battery (charging the battery).	
E	Other <sup>2</sup>	Includes all power usage from the low voltage accessories such as the climate control fan, headlights and heated seats. The higher the power usage is from these accessories, the larger the circle around the node. This node illuminates anytime the vehicle is on since there is always some low level power in use.	
F	Climate <sup>2,3</sup>	Includes the power usage from the high-voltage climate control components such as the electric A/C compressor. The higher the power usage is from these components, the larger the circle around this node.	

Callout	Item	Description
G	Battery	Represents your high-voltage battery. A circle illuminates around the node when the high-voltage battery is receiving power from regenerative braking or engine charging. The higher the power going into the high-voltage battery, the larger the circle around this node.
H	Fuel	Represents the fuel tank in the vehicle.
I	Fuel-to-Engine Flow	Shows flow from the fuel tank to the engine when the engine is on and using fuel (there are some cases where the engine is on, but not using any fuel). When the engine is on, but not using fuel, the engine node is active, but the fuel flow path is off. An example of this is when your foot is off the accelerator pedal and the vehicle is traveling at a high speed.
J	Engine on due to:	Provides you with the reason(s) the gasoline engine is on. When the gasoline engine is off, this display does not appear. <b>Engine On due to</b> reasons displayed by the system are in a chart following this list.
K	Motor-to-Engine Flow	Shows the direction of power flow between the engine and the electric motor. The direction indicates if the engine is providing power to the high-voltage electrical system, or if the high-voltage electrical system is providing power to control or start the engine.
L	Engine	Represents the gasoline engine. It illuminates only when the gasoline engine is on. The higher the engine power is, the larger the circle around this node.
M	Engine-to-Wheels Flow	Shows the direction of the power flow between the engine and the wheels.
N	Drive	Represents the power going to the wheels. The higher the wheel power is, the larger the circle around this node. When the engine is off, drive power displays in blue. When the engine is on, drive power displays in grey.

<sup>1</sup>The battery-to-motor flow includes battery power the vehicle is using for acceleration. It does not include energy the vehicle is using for accessories (such as air conditioning, headlights and radio). This screen displays accessories and climate usage separately.

<sup>2</sup>**Accessories** indicates electrical power demands from your vehicle's accessory systems. Accessories use power but do not contribute to making the vehicle move. The power flow displays power usage from the climate control system and other accessories separately.

<sup>3</sup>The climate control system may determine A/C is necessary even when you turn it off. In this case, you may see some climate power when the A/C is off.

Engine On due to	
Heater setting	The engine is on because of the heater setting. Reduce or turn off the heater setting to return to electric mode.
High speed	The engine is on because the vehicle speed exceeds the level for electric mode operation. Reduce the speed to return to electric mode.
Drive power	The engine is on when applying pressure to the accelerator pedal or switching on the speed control. Reduce pressure on the accelerator pedal or switch off the speed control to return to full electric mode.
Neutral gear	The engine is on because the vehicle is in neutral gear. Shift out of neutral gear to return to electric mode.
Low gear	The engine is on because the vehicle is in low gear. Shift out of low gear to return to electric mode.
Battery charging	The engine is on to charge the high-voltage battery. The vehicle returns to electric mode once the battery is charged.
Normal operation	The engine is on to optimize vehicle operation. The vehicle returns to electric mode when possible.
Engine braking active	The engine is on to provide increased powertrain braking. This can occur when you turn on the grade assist feature, when speed control is on or when driving with your foot off the accelerator pedal. Turning off grade assist or speed control may allow the vehicle to return to electric mode.

## APPS

**Note:** For more information about available apps, supported devices and troubleshooting, refer to our local website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. See **Settings** (page 408).

**Note:** We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

**Note:** We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

**Note:** Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

**Note:** Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

### Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off. See **Phone** (page 397).
2. Connect your device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select **Disable**.
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

### Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 397).
2. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
3. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 397).
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select **Find mobile apps**.

**Note:** The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

### Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 397).
3. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.

5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

**Note:** Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

## SETTINGS

 Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select a tile to access the settings.

 Select the option to display extra information.

### Ambient Lighting

You can adjust the ambient lighting settings.

### Android Auto

You can switch Android Auto on and off.

### Apple CarPlay

You can switch Apple CarPlay on and off.

### Audio

You can adjust the audio settings.

### Automatic Updates

You can switch automatic updates on and off and adjust the settings.

### Bluetooth

You can switch Bluetooth on and off and pair your cell phone.

### Clock

You can adjust the clock settings.

### Display

You can adjust display settings like brightness and auto dim.

### Emergency Assistance

You can switch Emergency Assistance on and off.

### FordPass

You can adjust the FordPass settings.

### General

You can adjust settings like language, measurement units, or reset the system.

### Mobile Apps

You can adjust permissions, enable, disable, and update mobile apps.

### Navigation (If Equipped)

You can adjust navigation settings like map preferences and route guidance.

### Phone

You can connect and disconnect your device, or manage the connected device settings.

### Seats (If Equipped)

You can adjust the position and the massage function of the seats.

### Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

### Valet Mode (If Equipped)

You can enable and disable the valet mode.

## SYNC™ 3

---

### **Vehicle (If Equipped)**

You can adjust the camera settings.

### **Voice Control**

You can adjust the voice control settings.

### **Wi-Fi**

You can switch Wi-Fi on and off and adjust the settings.

## SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

### Voice Recognition

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand what I am saying.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– You are using the wrong voice commands.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 386).</li><li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.</li></ul></li><li>– You are speaking too soon.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li><li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li></ul></li><li>– You are using the wrong voice commands.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 386).</li><li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.</li></ul></li><li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by the system.</li></ul></li><li>– The name contains special characters, for example *,- or +.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Rename the files on your device or use the touch-screen to select and play the track.</li></ul></li></ul>

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– The name contains special characters, for example *-, or +. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## USB and Bluetooth Audio

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cable connection issue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incompatible cable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Incorrect device settings.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.</li><li>• Check that your device is not set only to charge.</li></ul></li><li>– Device lock screen enabled.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system does not recognize my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li><li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li></ul></li></ul>
I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Incompatible device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.</li></ul></li><li>– Device not connected.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Pair your device. See <b>Phone</b> (page 397).</li></ul></li><li>– Media player not running.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Start the media player on your device.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system does not recognize the music on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Repair the files on your device.</li></ul></li><li>– Corrupt files.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Repair the files on your device.</li></ul></li><li>– Copyright protected files.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected.</li></ul></li><li>– Unsupported file format.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See <b>Entertainment</b> (page 392).</li></ul></li></ul>

## SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device indexing required.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Re-index your device. See <b>Settings</b> (page 408).</li></ul></li><li>– Device lock screen enabled.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li></ul></li></ul>
Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device malfunction.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.</li></ul></li></ul>
When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Turn the volume down on your device</li></ul></li></ul>
The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order.	<p>If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory.</li><li>– If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.</li><li>– If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.</li><li>– If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.</li></ul>

**Phone**

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Resolution</b>
During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone microphone muted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unmute your cell phone microphone.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– System restart required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot download phone-book.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 408).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
A message displays suggesting that my phone-book has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> <li>• Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 408).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my cell phone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> <li>• Install the latest cell phone firmware.</li> <li>• Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again.</li> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download off. See <b>Settings</b> (page 408).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Text messaging does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot hear text messages.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Navigation (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect entry method.           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter the street name with the country.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not recognize coordinates.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are using the wrong coordinates format.           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the format ##. #####, ##. ##### (for N/S, E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

**Apps**

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Incompatible device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You need an Android device with OS 4.3 or higher or an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your Android or iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Download and install the latest version of the app.</li></ul></li><li>– AppLink compatible apps not running on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required.</li></ul></li><li>– Incorrect app settings.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Apps failed to fully close.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Restart the apps and try again.</li><li>• If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device.</li><li>• If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch Bluetooth off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li></ul></li></ul>

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Cable connection issue.</li> <li>• Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li> </ul>
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device volume is low.</li> <li>• Turn the volume up on your device.</li> </ul>
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth ports, the system cannot find all of them.</li> <li>• Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.</li> </ul>

**Wi-Fi Connectivity**

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Resolution</b>
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Password error.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter the correct network password.</li></ul></li><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li><li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li></ul></li></ul>
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li></ul>
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Obstructed network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li></ul></li></ul>

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Hidden network. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– No software update available.</li> <li>– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

**Note:** You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.

## Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

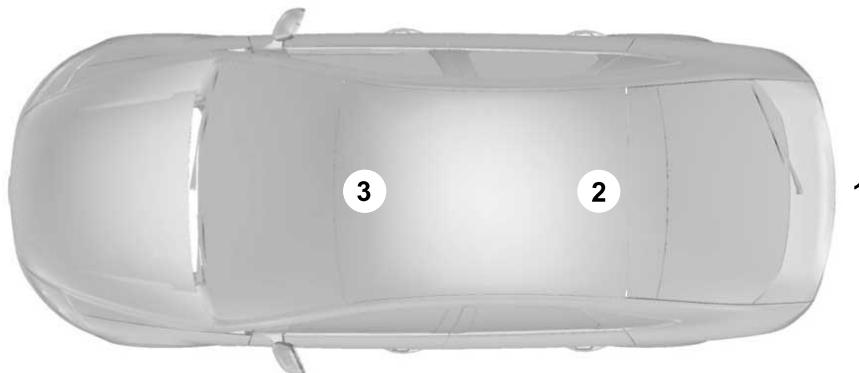


**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

### Car/SUV

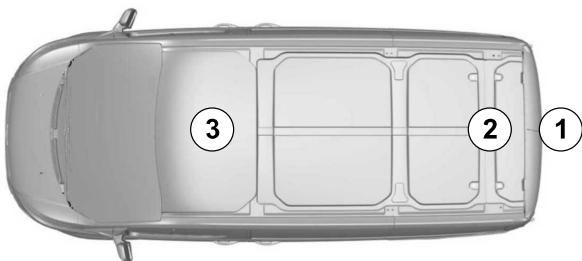


1

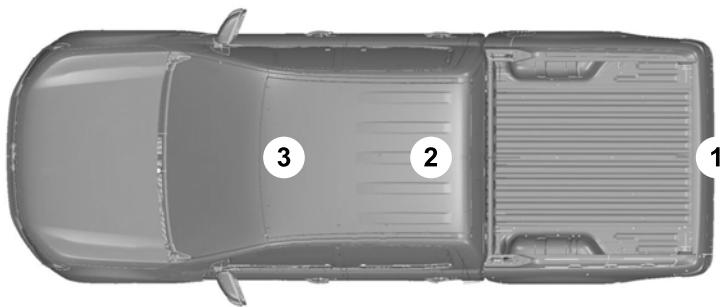
# Appendices

---

## Van



## Truck



## Appendices

---

<b>Frequency Band MHz</b>	<b>Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)</b>	<b>Antenna Positions</b>
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

# Appendices

---

## ECALL USER INFORMATION

### **eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3**

#### **1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM**

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **eCall** (page 42).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **eCall** (page 42).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **eCall** (page 42).

#### **2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING**

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.
- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
  - Vehicle Identification Number.
  - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
  - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
  - Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.

## Appendices

---

- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
- Any additional data (if applicable): -

2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.  
Additional information (if available): -

2.4. Arrangements for data processing.

2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.  
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.  
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.

2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.  
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.

2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

## Appendices

---

- 2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.
- (1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).
- (2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).
- (3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

### **3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)**

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.
  - 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).

# Appendices

---

- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

### Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

# Appendices

---

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

## **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:**

You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

## **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:**

**Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

**Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

**SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

**Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.

## **Internet-Based Services**

**Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.

**Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components"). SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional

# Appendices

---

charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

**Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.

**Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

## UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

# Appendices

---

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by

**Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

## **No Liability for Certain Damages:**

EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS

LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide"). Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

### General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

## Appendices

---

- Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

## Appendices

---

### Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

### Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

# Appendices

---

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

## Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

## Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

## Appendices

---

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

**(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees if reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

# Appendices

---

filings, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(I) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

## **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

### **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

# Appendices

---

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortious, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and **(f)** lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

# Appendices

---

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## **5. Limitation of Liability**

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

# Appendices

---

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

### **8.3**

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

### **8.4**

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

### **8.5**

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

# Appendices

---

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

### 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

### 9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

#### Terms and Conditions

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

## Appendices

---

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

# Appendices

---

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

## NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.

©1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

### I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

## Appendices

---

**B. Canada Data.** The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

**1. Disclaimer and Limitation:** Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

**a. Disclaimer:** The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

**b. Limitation on Liability:** The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

**2. Copyright Notice:** In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements. "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

**3. End-User Terms:** Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

# Appendices

---

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

**4. Additional Provisions:** The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

**II. Mexico.** The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice:

*"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"*

## III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO"
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadalupe, French Guiana and Martiniique Mexico	<i>"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"</i>

## IV. Middle East Territory

# Appendices

---

**A. Third Party Notices.** Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
---------	--------

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

**B. Jordan Data.** Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

**V. Europe Territory**

**A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe**

**1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes.** Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

**2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium.** Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports.”

**B. Paper Maps.** With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

## Appendices

---

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landesvermessungärmlter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"

## Appendices

---

Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”	Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.
Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”	B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice:
Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.”	“Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”
E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.		

### VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited ([www.psma.com.au](http://www.psma.com.au)).

### AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

# Appendices

---

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

## **VII. China Territory**

### ***Personal Use Only***

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

# Appendices

---

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

## **Restrictions**

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

## **Limited Warranty**

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

## **Customer Remedies**

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

## **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

# Appendices

---

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

## Appendices

---

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

# Appendices

---

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT, NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

## **Radio Frequency Statement**

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

**(1)** This device may not cause harmful interference, and

**(2)** this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## **Taiwan Territory**

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

## **SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

### **Website**

[www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/](http://www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/)

### **1. Acceptance**

# Appendices

---

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsofuse">www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsofuse</a>

## 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

## 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

## 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

## 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

## Appendices

---

### DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit [www.wirelessconformity.ford.com](http://www.wirelessconformity.ford.com).

# Index

---

## A

### A/C

    See: Climate Control.....134

About This Manual.....9

### ABS

    See: Brakes.....204

### ABS driving hints

    See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock

    Brakes.....204

### Accessories

    See: Replacement Parts

    Recommendation.....11

### ACC

    See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Stop and Go.....233

    See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles Without: Stop and Go.....228

Acknowledgments.....9

Active Park Assist.....217

    Using Active Park Assist.....218

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....70

Air Conditioning

    See: Climate Control.....134

### Alarm

    See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....66

    See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....67

All-Wheel Drive.....202

Ambient Lighting.....84

    Switching the Ambient Lamps On.....84

Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With:

    Integral Battery.....66

    Arming the Alarm.....67

    Battery Back-up Sounder.....66

    Disarming the Alarm.....67

    Full and Reduced Guard.....67

    Inclination Sensors.....66

    Interior Sensors.....66

    Perimeter Alarm.....66

    Triggering the Alarm.....66

Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....67

    Alarm System.....67

    Arming the Alarm.....69

    Disarming the Alarm.....69

    Full and Reduced Guard.....68

Triggering the Alarm.....	68
Appendices.....	420
Apps.....	407
Using Apps on an Android Device.....	407
Using Apps on an iOS Device.....	407
Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device.....	407
At a Glance.....	18
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	101
Headlamps On Warning Chime.....	101
Key in Ignition Warning Chime.....	101
Keyless Warning Alert.....	101
Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....	102
Audio System.....	375
General Information.....	375
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony Audio System.....	377
Menu Structure.....	378
Audio Unit - Vehicles Without: Sony Audio System.....	376
Autolamps.....	78
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps.....	79
Automatic Climate Control.....	134
Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents.....	134
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	134
Setting the Temperature.....	134
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	134
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off (If Equipped).....	134
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	134
Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off.....	134
Switching the Climate Control On and Off.....	134
Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off.....	134
Automatic Crash Notification System.....	42
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	293
Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....	293
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	293
What is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	293

# Index

---

Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With:	
Push Button Start.....	161
How Does Automatic Engine Stop	
Work.....	161
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	161
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and	
Off.....	161
Automatic High Beam Control.....	79
About Automatic High Beam Control.....	79
Automatic High Beam Indicator.....	80
Overriding Automatic High Beam	
Control.....	80
Switching Automatic High Beam Control	
On or Off.....	80
Automatic Transmission - 8-Speed	
Automatic Transmission.....	199
Automatic Return to Park.....	200
SelectShift™.....	200
Stay in Neutral Mode.....	200
Transmission Selector Positions.....	199
Automatic Transmission - Hybrid Electric	
Vehicle (HEV), 6-Speed Automatic	
Transmission.....	196
Brake-Shift Interlock.....	198
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or	
Snow.....	199
Understanding the Shift Positions of Your	
Automatic Transmission.....	197
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning.....	174
Auto-Start-Stop.....	170
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	171
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	171
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	170
Auto-Start-Stop –	
Troubleshooting.....	171
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	172
Auto-Start-Stop – Information	
Messages.....	171
Autowipers.....	72
Settings.....	73
Auxiliary Heater.....	136
Programming the Fuel-Operated Parking	
Heater.....	136
Auxiliary Power Points.....	154
12 Volt DC Power Point.....	154
230 Volt AC Power Point.....	154
Location.....	154
AWD	
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	202
<b>B</b>	
Battery	
See: Changing the 12V Battery - Excluding:	
Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	326
See: Changing the 12V Battery - Hybrid Electric	
Vehicle (HEV).....	328
Blind Spot Information System.....	251
.....	251
Switching the System On and Off.....	252
System Errors.....	252
Using the Blind Spot Information	
System.....	251
BLIS	
See: Blind Spot Information System.....	251
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	315
Brake Fluid Check.....	325
Brakes.....	204
General Information.....	204
Breaking-In.....	283
Brakes and Clutch.....	283
Tires.....	283
Bulb Specification Chart.....	366
<b>C</b>	
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L	
EcoBlue.....	364
Brake System.....	366
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue) Tank.....	366
Engine.....	364
Fuel Tank.....	365
Washer Reservoir.....	366
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L	
Hybrid.....	362
Brake System.....	364
Engine.....	362
Fuel Tank.....	363
Washer Reservoir.....	364
Capacities and Specifications.....	356
Cargo Nets - Wagon.....	266
Luggage retention net.....	266
Catalytic Converter.....	183
On-Board Diagnostics System.....	183

# Index

---

Changing a Bulb.....	331
Headlamp.....	331
LED Lamps.....	332
Replacing the License Plate Lamp Bulb.....	334
Reverse Lamp.....	332
Changing a Fuse.....	313
Fuses.....	313
Changing a Road Wheel.....	345
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information.....	345
Installing a Road Wheel.....	350
Removing a Road Wheel.....	349
Removing the Spare Wheel, Vehicle Jack and Lug Nut Tool.....	346
Removing the Wheel Trim.....	347
Vehicle Jack.....	347
Vehicle Jacking Points.....	348
Changing the 12V Battery - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	326
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	327
Changing the 12V Battery - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	328
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	329
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	47
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	374
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	330
Changing the Front Wiper Blades.....	330
Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blades.....	330
Checking Local Hazard Information Status.....	264
Checking MyKey System Status.....	54
MyKey Distance.....	54
Number of Admin Keys.....	54
Number of MyKeys.....	54
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	330
Child Restraint Positioning.....	29
Child Safety.....	21
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks.....	33
Cigar Lighter.....	155
Cleaning the Exterior.....	335
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	336
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	335
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	335
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	336
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	336
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	335
Cleaning the Underbody.....	336
Cleaning Wheels.....	335
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	335
Cleaning the Interior.....	336
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	337
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	337
Cleaning Fabric Seats and Headliners.....	337
Cleaning Leather and Vinyl.....	337
Cleaning Moonroof Tracks.....	338
Cleaning Plastic.....	337
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	338
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	338
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	336
Clearing All MyKeys.....	53
Climate.....	394
Accessing Rear Climate Controls.....	396
Accessing the Climate Control Menu.....	394
Directing the Airflow.....	394
Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator.....	396
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	395
Setting the Temperature.....	395
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	395
Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off.....	395
Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off.....	396
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	396
Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off.....	397
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	396
Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off.....	395
Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off.....	395
Switching the Climate Control On and Off.....	395

# Index

---

Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off.....	395
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	396
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	396
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	396
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....	396
Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off.....	397
Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off.....	397
Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off.....	397
Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off.....	396
Climate Control.....	134
Climate Controlled Seats.....	150
Cooled Seats.....	151
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission.....	326
Cold Weather Precautions.....	283
Collision, Damage or Fire Event.....	290
Guidance for Ford Motor Company Electric and Hybrid-Electric Vehicles Equipped With High Voltage Batteries.....	290
Connected Vehicle.....	370
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	370
Connected Vehicle Data - Vehicles With: Modem.....	15
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	370
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	370
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem.....	371
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	372
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	370
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	370
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	370
What Is the Modem.....	370
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	370
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	320
See: Engine Coolant Check - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	324
Cornering Lamps.....	82
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	293
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	293
Creating a MyKey.....	52
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	374
Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	374
Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password.....	374
Cross Traffic Alert.....	253
Blocked Sensors.....	254
Switching the System Off and On.....	255
System Errors.....	255
System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts.....	254
System Limitations.....	255
Using the Cross Traffic Alert System.....	253
Cruise Control.....	227
Principle of Operation.....	227
Cruise control	
See: Using Cruise Control.....	227
Cup Holders.....	156
<b>D</b>	
Data Privacy.....	13
Services That Third Parties Provide.....	13
Services That We Provide.....	13
Declaration of Conformity.....	452
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	189
Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration.....	190
On-Board Diagnostics System.....	190
Digital Radio.....	380
General Information.....	380
Using Digital Audio Broadcast and SYNC with Touchscreen.....	382
Using Digital Audio Broadcast on a Non-Touchscreen.....	381
Direction Indicators.....	82

# Index

---

Dog Guard - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), Wagon.....	271	EcoSelect Indicator.....	169
Installing the Dog Guard Behind the Front Seats.....	271	Switching EcoSelect On and Off.....	169
Installing the Dog Guard Behind the Rear Seats.....	273	Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission.....	205
Dog Guard - Wagon, Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	269	Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	205
Installing the Dog Guard Behind the Front Seats.....	269	Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	206
Installing the Dog Guard Behind the Rear Seats.....	270	Electric Parking Brake Information Messages.....	206
Doors and Locks.....	56	Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	205
Drive Control.....	262	Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge.....	206
Adaptive Steering.....	262	Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission.....	207
Driver Select Suspension.....	262	Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	207
Driver Airbag.....	36	Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	208
Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning.....	37	Electric Parking Brake Information Messages.....	208
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	36	Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	208
Driver Alert.....	245	Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge.....	208
Principle of Operation.....	245	Electric Vehicle Information.....	403
Using Driver Alert.....	246	Power Flow.....	403
Driver Knee Airbag.....	39	Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	420
Driving Aids.....	241	Emergency Assistance.....	44
Driving Economically.....	283	Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: eCall.....	16
Driving Hints.....	283	Enabling Local Hazard Information.....	264
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	284	Enabling Remote Start.....	132
<b>E</b>		End User License Agreement.....	426
eCall.....	42	<b>VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)</b> .....	426
Automatically Initiated Emergency Call.....	43	Engine Coolant Check - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	320
Changing the Backup Battery.....	43	Adding Coolant.....	321
Emergency Call System Indicator.....	42	Coolant Change.....	322
Emergency Call System Information Messages.....	43	Engine Coolant Temperature Management.....	323
Manually Initiated Emergency Call.....	43	Fail-Safe Cooling.....	322
eCall User Information.....	423	Recycled Coolant.....	322
eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3.....	423	Severe Climates.....	322
Eco.....	256		
Eco Mode System Display.....	256		
Principle of Operation.....	256		
EcoSelect.....	168		
About EcoSelect.....	168		

# Index

---

Engine Coolant Check - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	324
Adding Engine Coolant.....	325
Adding Inverter System Controller Coolant.....	325
Engine Cooling Fan.....	320
Engine Emission Control.....	183
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	66
Engine Oil Check.....	319
Adding Engine Oil.....	319
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBlue.....	319
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Hybrid.....	319
Entertainment.....	392
Playing Music From a USB or Media Player.....	394
Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device.....	393
Using the Radio.....	392
Environment.....	17
EPB	
See: Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission.....	205
See: Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission.....	207
Event Data.....	14
Exterior Mirrors.....	87
Auto-Dimming Feature.....	89
Auto-Folding Mirrors.....	88
Blind Spot Monitor.....	89
Direction Indicator Mirrors.....	89
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	87
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	89
Loose Mirror.....	88
Memory Mirrors.....	89
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	87
Power-Folding Mirrors.....	87
Reverse Mirror Dipping.....	88
<b>F</b>	
Fan	
See: Engine Cooling Fan.....	320
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	34
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	34
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	345
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	339
Floor Mats.....	284
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	80
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	81
Front Fog Lamps.....	80
Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....	81
Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or Off.....	80
Front Parking Aid.....	214
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	215
Fuel and Refueling.....	176
Fuel Burning Heater	
See: Auxiliary Heater.....	136
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.0L EcoBlue.....	369
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.0L Hybrid.....	368
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	368
European Directive 1999/94/EC.....	368
Fuel Economy and CO2 Emissions.....	368
Fuel Consumption.....	181
Advertised Capacity.....	182
Fuel Economy.....	182
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	177
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	177
Long-Term Storage.....	177
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	176
Long-Term Storage.....	177
Fuses.....	294
Fuse Specification Chart - Excluding:	
Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	294
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	300
Power Distribution Box.....	294
Fuse Specification Chart - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	304
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	310
Power Distribution Box.....	304
<b>G</b>	
Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	188
Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages.....	189

# Index

---

Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration.....	188
Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	189
Gauges - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	92
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	94
Fuel Gauge.....	94
Information Display.....	93
Type 1 and 2.....	92
Type 3.....	93
Gauges - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	95
Left Information Display.....	95
Right Information Display.....	97
Gearbox See: Transmission.....	196
Global Opening and Closing.....	86
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	87
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	86
Using Global Closing.....	86
Using Global Opening.....	86
<b>H</b>	
Hazard Flashers.....	286
Hazard Flasher Indicator.....	286
Switching the Hazard Flashers On or Off.....	286
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	79
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With: Automatic Headlamp Leveling.....	81
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With: Manual Headlamp Leveling.....	81
Headlamp Washers.....	75
Headrest See: Head Restraints.....	140
Head Restraints.....	140
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	141
Tilting Head Restraints .....	142
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	136
Heated Rear Window.....	136
Heated Seats.....	149
Front Seats.....	149
Rear Seats.....	150
Heated Steering Wheel.....	70
Heated Windshield.....	135
Heating See: Climate Control.....	134
HEV See: Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....	165
High Voltage Battery.....	193
General Information.....	193
High Voltage Shutoff Switch.....	195
Hill Start Assist.....	209
Switching the System On and Off.....	210
Using Hill Start Assist.....	209
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....	135
Defogging or Clearing the Windshield of Thin Ice.....	135
Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather.....	135
General Hints.....	135
Quickly Cooling the Interior.....	135
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	135
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	135
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	204
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp.....	204
Hood Lock See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	315
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	152
Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....	165
<b>I</b>	
Information Displays.....	103
General Information - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	103
General Information - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	106
Information Messages.....	115
Active City Stop.....	115
Active Park Assist.....	115
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	116
Airbag.....	116
Alarm.....	116
All-Wheel Drive.....	117
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	117
Automatic High Beam Control.....	117
Auto-Start-Stop.....	118
Battery and Charging System.....	118

# Index

---

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert Systems.....	119	ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	27
Brake System.....	119	Top Tether Anchor Points.....	28
Diesel Engine.....	120	Instrument Cluster.....	92
Doors and Locks.....	120	Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	79
Driver Alert.....	120	Instrument Panel - LHD.....	18
Electric Parking Brake.....	121	Instrument Panel - RHD.....	19
Engine.....	121	Interior Lamps.....	83
Fuel-Operated Parking Heater.....	122	Front Interior Lamp.....	83
Fuel System.....	122	Rear Interior Lamps.....	84
Headlamps.....	123	Interior Mirror - Vehicles With:	
Hill Start Assist.....	123	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	89
Lane Keeping System.....	123	Interior Mirror - Vehicles Without:	
Maintenance.....	124	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	89
MyKey.....	124	Introduction.....	9
Parking Aid.....	125		
Pre-Collision Assist.....	125		
Remote Control.....	125		
Seats.....	126		
Selective Catalytic Reductant System.....	126		
Stability Control.....	127		
Starting System.....	127		
Steering System.....	128		
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	128		
Towing.....	129		
Traction Control.....	129		
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	129		
Transmission.....	130		
Installing Child Restraints - 4-Door.....	21		
Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg.....	24		
Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers.....	24		
Booster Seats.....	22		
Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups.....	22		
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	23		
Top Tether Anchor Points.....	24		
Installing Child Restraints - 5-Door/ Wagon.....	25		
Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg.....	29		
Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers.....	28		
Booster Seats.....	26		
Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups.....	26		
		Jump Starting the Vehicle - Excluding:	
		Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	289
		To Connect the Booster Cables.....	289
		To Start the Engine.....	290
		Jump Starting the Vehicle - Hybrid	
		Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	286
		Preparing Your Vehicle.....	286
		To Connect the Booster Cables.....	287
		To Start Your Vehicle.....	288
		K	
		Keyless Entry.....	58
		Deactivated Passive Keys.....	60
		Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	60
		Locking the Doors.....	58
		Locking the Liftgate.....	60
		Principle of Operation.....	58
		Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys.....	60
		Switching Keyless Entry On and Off.....	60
		Unlocking the Doors.....	59
		Unlocking the Liftgate.....	59
		Keys and Remote Controls.....	47
		Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	49
		Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	49
		Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	49

# Index

---

## L

Lane Keeping System.....	247
Switching the System On and Off.....	248
Liftgate.....	61
Lighting Control.....	77
Flashing High Beam Headlamps.....	78
Lighting Control Positions.....	77
Switching All of the Parking Lamps On.....	77
Switching High Beam Headlamps On and Off.....	78
Switching the Left-Hand Side or the Right-Hand Side Parking Lamps On.....	77
Lighting.....	77
General Information.....	77
Load Carriers	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	268
Load Carrying.....	265
General Information.....	265
Local Hazard Information.....	264
Local Hazard Information	
Precautions.....	264
Locating Your Vehicle.....	47
Locking and Unlocking.....	56
Individually Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	58
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside.....	57
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	57
Power Door Locks.....	56
Remote Control.....	56
Locking the Steering Wheel.....	70
Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	70
Luggage Anchor Points.....	265
4-door and 5-door.....	265
Hybrid.....	266
Wagon.....	265
Luggage Covers.....	267
Stowing the luggage cover - Estate without full size spare wheel.....	268
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	345
Lug Nuts.....	352
Locking Lug Nuts.....	352
Lug Nut Torque.....	352

## M

Maintenance.....	315
General Information.....	315
Manual Liftgate.....	61
Closing the Liftgate.....	61
Opening the Liftgate.....	61
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 4-Way Manual Seat.....	142
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 8-Way Manual Seat.....	143
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	144
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	143
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	143
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	144
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	143
Manual Transmission.....	196
General Information.....	196
Shifting Into Reverse Gear.....	196
Memory Function.....	147
Easy Entry and Exit Function.....	148
Linking a PreSet Position to Your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key.....	148
Saving a PreSet Position.....	148
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	103
Mirrors	
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	85
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	12
Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	15
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	91
Moonroof.....	90
MyKey Settings.....	51
Configurable Settings.....	51
Non-Configurable Settings.....	51
MyKey – Troubleshooting.....	54
What is an admin key?.....	54
Why can I not clear the MyKeys?.....	54
Why can I not create a MyKey?.....	54
Why can I not program a MyKey?.....	54
Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?.....	55
Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?.....	54
MyKey™.....	51
Principle of Operation.....	51

# Index

---

## N

Navigation.....	399
Changing the Format of the Map.....	400
Live Traffic.....	402
Navigation Map Updates.....	402
Route Guidance.....	400
Setting a Destination.....	399
Zoom.....	400

## O

Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	319
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	315
Closing the Hood.....	316
Opening the Hood.....	315
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	90
Closing the Moonroof.....	90
Opening the Moonroof.....	90
Opening and Closing the Sun Shade.....	90
Closing the Sun Shade.....	90
Opening the Sun Shade.....	90

## P

Parking Aids.....	213
Principle of Operation.....	213
Passenger Airbag.....	37
Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning.....	37
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	37
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	66
Arming the Engine Immobilizer.....	66
Coded Keys.....	66
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer.....	66
Principle of Operation.....	66
Passive Key Backup Position.....	50
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	66
Pedestrian Alert System.....	41
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting.....	41
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting.....	41
Pedestrian Alert System – Information Messages.....	41

Phone.....	397
Android Auto.....	399
Apple CarPlay.....	398
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time.....	397
Text Messaging.....	398
Using Your Cell Phone.....	397
Post-Crash Alert System.....	292
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	56
Power Liftgate.....	62
Closing the Liftgate.....	63
Liftgate Ajar Information Messages.....	65
Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp.....	64
Obstacle Detection.....	64
Opening the Liftgate.....	62
Setting the Liftgate Open Height.....	63
Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	64
Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off.....	64
Power Seats - Vehicles With:	
Multi-Contour Seats.....	145
Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active Motion.....	146
Power Lumbar.....	146
Power Seats - Vehicles Without:	
Multi-Contour Seats.....	144
Power Lumbar.....	145
Power Windows.....	85
Bounce-Back.....	85
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	85
Overriding Bounce-Back.....	85
Rear Window Lock.....	85
Resetting Bounce-Back.....	86
Pre-Collision Assist.....	257
Distance Alert.....	258
Distance Indication.....	259
Pre-Collision Assist Information Messages.....	261
Pre-Collision Assist System Sensors.....	260
Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp.....	260
Preconditioning Your Vehicle for Cold Weather Driving.....	283
Programming a MyKey.....	52
Protecting the Environment.....	17
Puncture	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	345

# Index

---

Push Button Ignition Switch.....	157
Starting the Engine.....	157
Switching the Ignition Off.....	157
Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode.....	157
<b>R</b>	
REACH.....	11
Rear Fog Lamps.....	81
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator.....	81
Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On or Off.....	81
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....	153
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....	153
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....	152
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....	152
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	152
Rear Parking Aid.....	213
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	214
Rear Seats.....	149
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	266
Rear View Camera.....	223
Camera Guidelines.....	224
Manual Zoom.....	226
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	225
Rear Camera Delay.....	226
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	224
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	223
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	75
Rear Window Washer.....	75
Rear Window Wiper.....	75
Refueling.....	179
Refueling System Overview.....	179
Refueling System Warning.....	181
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	179
Remote Control Limitations.....	47
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle.....	132
Remote Start Limitations.....	132
Remote Start.....	132
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel.....	133
Climate Control Settings.....	133
Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings.....	133
Setting the Remote Start Duration.....	133
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel.....	132
Climate Control Settings.....	132
Heated Seat Settings.....	133
Setting the Remote Start Duration.....	133
Removing the Key Blade.....	47
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	338
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	11
Collision Repairs.....	12
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....	12
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	49
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	354
Restarting the Engine.....	170
Roadside Emergencies.....	286
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	268
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	283
Running Out of Fuel.....	177
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	178
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	178
<b>S</b>	
Safety Precautions.....	176
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....	34
Seatbelt Reminder.....	35
Turning the Seatbelt Reminder Off.....	35
Seatbelts.....	34
Seats.....	140
Security.....	66
Selective Catalytic Reductant System.....	183
AdBlue® Consumption.....	186
AdBlue® Guidelines.....	184
Filling the AdBlue® Tank.....	184

# Index

---

Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Container.....	185
Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump.....	185
Selective Catalytic Reductant System Information Messages.....	187
Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp.....	186
Service Data.....	14
Settings Data.....	15
Comfort and Convenience Data.....	15
Entertainment Data.....	15
Settings.....	408
Ambient Lighting.....	408
Android Auto.....	408
Apple CarPlay.....	408
Audio.....	408
Automatic Updates.....	408
Bluetooth.....	408
Clock.....	408
Display.....	408
Emergency Assistance.....	408
FordPass.....	408
General.....	408
Mobile Apps.....	408
Navigation.....	408
Phone.....	408
Seats.....	408
Sound.....	408
Valet Mode.....	408
Vehicle.....	409
Voice Control.....	409
Wi-Fi.....	409
Side Airbags.....	38
Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning.....	39
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	39
Side Curtain Airbags.....	40
Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning.....	40
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	40
Side Sensing System.....	215
Object Distance Indicator.....	216
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	140
Snow Chains	
See: Using Snow Chains.....	344
Spare Wheel	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	345
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	227
Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	241
Principle of Operation.....	241
Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter .....	242
Using the system.....	241
Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Cruise Control.....	243
Principle of Operation.....	243
Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter .....	244
Using the Speed Limiter.....	243
Stability Control.....	212
Principle of Operation.....	212
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions.....	157
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	157
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	161
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	161
Starting the Engine.....	158
Stopping the Engine.....	159
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	161
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions.....	163
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages.....	162
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps.....	161
Starting the Engine.....	158
Restarting the Engine After Stopping it.....	159
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	158
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System.....	158
Steering Wheel.....	70
Stopping the Engine.....	170
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	160
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	159
Storage Compartments.....	156
Sunroof	
See: Moonroof.....	90
Supplementary Restraints System.....	36
Principle of Operation.....	36

# Index

---

Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	170
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off.....	152
Semiannual Reminder.....	152
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....	37
Switching the Passenger Airbag Off.....	37
Switching the Passenger Airbag On.....	38
Symbols Glossary.....	9
SYNC™ 3.....	384
General Information.....	384
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	410
Additional Information and Assistance.....	419
Apps.....	416
Navigation.....	415
Phone.....	414
Resetting the System.....	419
USB and Bluetooth Audio.....	411
Voice Recognition.....	410
Wi-Fi Connectivity.....	418
<b>T</b>	
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	356
Tire Care.....	343
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	339
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	353
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	353
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	353
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	354
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	354
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....	355
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....	354
Tire Pressures.....	351
Temporary Spare Wheel.....	352
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	339
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	339
After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	343
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	340
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	339
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball.....	276
Attaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	277
Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	277
Quickly Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	278
Tow Ball Arm Guidelines.....	279
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Retractable Tow Ball.....	279
Driving with a Trailer.....	281
Maintenance.....	281
Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm.....	280
Towbar Dimensions - 4-Door/5-Door.....	359
Towbar Dimensions - Wagon.....	360
Towing a Trailer - 4-Door, Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	274
Towing a Trailer - 5-Door/Wagon.....	275
Towing a Trailer - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), 4-Door.....	275
Towing Points.....	292
Installing the Recovery Hook.....	292
Recovery Hook Location.....	292
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), 8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	281
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....	281
Towing.....	274
Traction Control.....	211
Principle of Operation.....	211
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	255
Principle of Operation.....	255
Using Traffic Sign Recognition.....	256
Trailer Sway Control.....	276
Transmission.....	196
<b>U</b>	
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBlue.....	318

# Index

---

Under Hood Overview - 2.0L	202
Hybrid.....	316
Unique Driving Characteristics.....	165
USB Port.....	382
Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles	
With: Stop and Go.....	233
Automatic Cancellation.....	237
Blocked Sensor.....	239
Canceling the Set Speed.....	237
Changing the Set Speed.....	236
Detection Issues.....	238
Following a Vehicle.....	235
Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop.....	236
Hilly Condition Usage.....	237
Overriding the Set Speed.....	236
Park Brake Application.....	237
Resuming the Set Speed.....	237
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....	234
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	235
Setting the Gap Distance.....	236
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off.....	237
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On.....	234
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	240
System Not Available.....	239
Using Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles	
Without: Stop and Go.....	228
Automatic Cancellation.....	231
Blocked Sensor.....	232
Canceling the Set Speed.....	231
Changing the Set Speed.....	231
Detection Issues.....	231
Following a Vehicle.....	229
Hilly Condition Usage.....	231
Overriding the Set Speed.....	230
Resuming the Set Speed.....	231
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....	229
Setting the Gap Distance.....	229
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off.....	231
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On.....	228
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	233
System Not Available.....	232
Using All-Wheel Drive.....	202
Driving on Snow and Ice.....	202
Using Cruise Control.....	227
Canceling the Set Speed.....	227
Changing the Set Speed.....	227
Cruise Control Indicator.....	228
Resuming the Set Speed.....	227
Setting the Cruise Speed.....	227
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	227
Switching Cruise Control On.....	227
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	54
Using Snow Chains.....	344
Vehicles with Stability Control.....	345
Using Stability Control.....	212
Stability Control Indicator.....	212
Using Traction Control.....	211
Switching Traction Control On or Off.....	211
Traction Control Indicator.....	211
Traction Control Off Warning Lamp.....	211
Using Voice Recognition.....	383
Apps.....	391
Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction.....	392
Entertainment.....	387
General.....	386
Navigation.....	390
Phone.....	389
Phone Voice Service.....	383
Voice Settings.....	391
Using Winter Tires.....	344
<b>V</b>	
Vehicle Care.....	335
Cleaning the Exterior.....	335
Cleaning the Interior.....	336
Vehicle Dimensions - 4-Door.....	356
Vehicle Dimensions - 5-Door.....	357
Vehicle Dimensions - Wagon.....	358
Vehicle Identification Number.....	361
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	361
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	374
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	134
Venting the Moonroof.....	91
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	353

# Index

---

## VIN

See: Vehicle Identification Number.....361

## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	97
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator.....	97
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	97
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp.....	98
Automatic High Beam Indicator.....	98
Auto-Start-Stop Indicator.....	98
Battery Warning Lamp.....	98
Blind Spot Information System Indicator.....	98
Cruise Control Indicator.....	98
Decklid Ajar Indicator.....	98
Direction Indicator.....	98
Door Ajar Indicator.....	98
Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp.....	98
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp.....	98
Engine Oil Pressure Warning Lamp.....	98
Engine Warning Lamps.....	99
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....	99
Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....	99
Frost Warning Lamp.....	99
Fuel Operated Heater Enabled Indicator.....	99
Fuel Operated Heater Operating Indicator.....	99
Glow Plug Indicator.....	99
Grade Assist Indicator.....	99
Hazard Flasher Indicator.....	100
High Beam Headlamp Indicator.....	100
Hood Ajar Warning Lamp.....	100
Lamps on Indicator.....	100
Lane Keeping Aid Warning Lamp.....	100
Lane Keeping Alert Indicator.....	100
Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp.....	100
Low Beam Headlamp Warning Lamp.....	100
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....	100
Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp.....	100
Ready to Drive Indicator.....	100
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator.....	100
Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp.....	100
Shift Indicator.....	101
Speed Limiter Indicator.....	101
Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator.....	101
Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp.....	101
Stop Safely Warning Lamp.....	101
Traffic Sign Recognition No Passing Indicator.....	101
Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Limit Indicator.....	101
Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp.....	101
Warning Triangle.....	286
Washer Fluid Check.....	330
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	72
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	338
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	370
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	170
What Is Local Hazard Information.....	264
What Is Remote Start.....	132
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System.....	41
What Is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	152
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	353
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	345
Wheels and Tires	
General Information.....	339
Windows and Mirrors.....	85
Windshield Washers	
Settings.....	74
Windshield Wipers	
Intermittent Wipe.....	72
Winter Tires	
See: Using Winter Tires.....	344
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	330
Wipers and Washers.....	72





